Schaum's Outlines

Latin Grammar

Alan Fishbone

The essential tools for reading Classical Latin!

113 practice exercises to hone skills

Accompanies any textbook

Glossary of Latin words

Use with these courses:
- Introduction to Latin
- Latin
- Advanced Latin
- Latin Translation
- Independent Studies in Latin
FROM USING THE WORK, INCLUDING ANY INFORMATION THAT CAN BE ACCESSED THROUGH THE WORK VIA HYPERLINK OR OTHERWISE, AND EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. McGraw-Hill and its licensors do not warrant or guarantee that the functions contained in the work will meet your requirements or that its operation will be uninterrupted or error free. Neither McGraw-Hill nor its licensors shall be liable to you or anyone else for any inaccuracy, error or omission, regardless of cause, in the work or for any damages resulting therefrom. McGraw-Hill has no responsibility for the content of any information accessed through the work. Under no circumstances shall McGraw-Hill and/or its licensors be liable for any indirect, incidental, special, punitive, consequential or similar damages that result from the use of or inability to use the work, even if any of them has been advised of the possibility of such damages. This limitation of liability shall apply to any claim or cause whatsoever whether such claim or cause arises in contract, tort or otherwise.

DOI: 10.1036/0071415408

Want to learn more?

We hope you enjoy this McGraw-Hill eBook! If you’d like more information about this book, its author, or related books and websites, please click here.

In Memoria

Mattaei Spinelli

This page intentionally left blank.

For more information about this book, click here.

CONTENTS

Preface
xi

Introduction to the Latin Alphabet and Pronunciation
xiii

Alphabet
xiii

Consonants
xiii
CHAPTER 1

The Noun

1

The Nominative Case

2

The Genitive Case

2

The Dative Case

3

The Accusative Case

3

The Ablative Case

3

The Vocative Case

4

Declension

4

The First Declension

4

The Second Declension

7

The Third Declension

9

The Fourth Declension
CHAPTER 2
The Adjective

First-Second-Declension Adjectives

Third-Declension Adjectives

Three-Termination Adjectives

Two-Termination Adjectives

One-Termination Adjectives

Adjectives with the Genitive Singular in -ōns

Comparison of Adjectives

The Comparative Degree

The Superlative Degree
Periphrastics  
62
Deponent Verbs  
63
Participles  
64
Imperfect Subjunctive  
65
Semi-Deponent Verbs  
66
Impersonal Verbs  
66
Some Irregular Verbs  
67
Present Participle  
68
Present Indicative  
68
Imperfect Indicative  
68
Future Indicative  
68
Present Subjunctive  
69
Present Participle  
69
Present Indicative  
69
Imperative  
69
CHAPTER 5
Adverbs and Prepositions
73
Adverbs
73
Prepositions
74
Common Prepositions with the Accusative Case
75
Common Prepositions with the Ablative Case
76
Prepositions That Take Both Accusative and Ablative Cases
76
CHAPTER 6
Syntax of the Noun
79
Nominative Case
79
Subject
79
Predicate Nominative
79
Genitive Case
80
Possessive Genitive
80
Partitive Genitive
80
Objective Genitive
80
Subject Accusative of an Infinitive

88

Accusative of Extent of Time or Space

88

Adverbial Accusative

88

Accusative of Place to Which

88

Accusative with Prepositions

89

Accusative of Exclamation

89

Ablative Case

91

Ablative of Place from Which (from)

91

Ablative of Place Where (in)

92

Ablative of Time When or within Which (in)

92

Ablative of Means or Instrument (by)

92

Ablative of Cause (from)

92

Ablative of Personal Agent (by)

92

Ablative of Manner (with)

93

Ablative of Separation (from)

93
Ablative of Comparison (from) 93
Ablative of Degree of Difference (by) 93
Ablative of Description (with) 93
Ablative of Respect 94
Ablative Absolute 94
Ablative with Prepositions 94
Locative Case 97
CHAPTER 7
Syntax of the Adjective 99
Predicate Adjective 99
Substantive Adjective 100
Adverbial Use of the Adjective 100
Comparative and Superlative Adjectives 100
CHAPTER 8
Syntax of the Simple Sentence 105
Indicative Mood 106
Imperative Mood

110

Negative Commands

111

Subjunctive Mood: Independent Uses

113

Potential

113

Deliberative

113

Optative

113

Hortatory or Jussive

114

Participles

117

Relative Clauses

119

Contents

ix

CHAPTER 9

Syntax of the Complex Sentence

121

Sequence of Tenses

122

Relative Time

122

Temporal Clauses

123

Causal Clauses
Concessive Clauses

Purpose Clauses

Indirect Commands

Result Clauses

Fear Clauses

Clauses of Prevention

Clauses of Doubting

Clauses of Proviso

Conditional Sentences

Simple Conditions

Future Conditions

Contrary-to-Fact Conditions

Relative Clauses with the Subjunctive

Relative Clause of Characteristic

Relative Clause of Purpose
Relative Clause of Result

Relative Clause of Cause

Participles Revisited

Ablative Absolute

Indirect Statement

Indirect Question

Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statement

Relative Clauses in Indirect Statement

Conditional Sentences in Indirect Statement

`Fore ut´ Clause

Impersonal Verbs

Verbs of Emotional Distress

Verbs and Expressions of Permission and Necessity

Verbs of Interest

The In®nitive
Schaum's Outline of Latin Grammar is a supplemental reference grammar for students who wish to review or strengthen their grasp of the fundamentals of Latin morphology and syntax. It may be used alongside any course or other material. It follows the basic structure of traditional Latin reference grammars, falling into two parts. The first presents Latin's extensive morphology in as systematic a manner as possible, with explanations of how the forms of Latin words are generated. Although these forms are many and there is really no particularly easy way around memorizing them, it is hoped that the organization and regularity of their systems will speak for itself. Indeed, that organization and regularity have always been one of the fascinating beauties of Latin, despite the labor of memorization, which can sometimes obscure this from the student's view. To help students through that labor, the book contains numerous exercises, both of recognition and of form generation.

The second part deals with the basic elements of Latin syntax, increasing in complexity from noun cases to the subordination of conditional sentences in indirect statement. They are illustrated with two separate sets of exercises, the first written in a deliberately simplified vocabulary and style that seeks only to exhibit the functioning of the syntax in question. The sentences in these exercises make no other pretensions of any kind. Following them, however, are sentences drawn from classical Latin prose that also exhibit the syntax in question. These sentences are much better examples of Latin in action, but also much more difficult, and so I have included extensive vocabulary glossaries to enable students to focus on them without the tedious distraction of slogging through the dictionary. I believe that it is through these real Latin sentences that students will progress from beginning levels of competence to the ability to read classical Latin authors. In the back, students will find answers to all exercise questions and translations of all Latin.

The book is by no means exhaustive. Some things have been left out or passed over in the hope of being concise or at least not overwhelming in detail. Vocabulary, for example, has not been treated at all; likewise, some more abstruse applications of the subjunctive have been omitted. The book is, after all, an `outline.' Ideally, students will be able to consult it on specific matters they encounter elsewhere, read the explanations, and practice understanding them through exercises.

I am deeply indebted to my teachers Floyd Moreland and Stephanie Russell of the Latin=Greek Institute. My thanks go to Rita Fleischer of the same for her help in the realization of this project.

ALAN FISHBONE
Introduction to the Latin Alphabet and Pronunciation

Alphabet

The Latin alphabet is the same as the English but without the letters j and w. For the most part it can be read in the same way, but a few differences must be noted.

CONSONANTS

c
is always pronounced hard, as in cat, never soft like an s.

g
is always pronounced hard, as in god, never soft like a j.

h
is always pronounced, as in hot, never left silent.

i
sometimes acts as a consonant before a vowel and is pronounced as the letter y in English.

v
is always pronounced as the letter w in English.

qu is always pronounced as one consonant, sounding, as in English, like kw.

The other consonant letters are pronounced as in English.

VOWELS

Vowels in Latin are said to be either long or short, depending on the time taken to pronounce them within a given word.

Long vowels will be marked in this text with a horizontal bar above them. This mark is known as a macron.

There are differences of pronunciation between the long and short versions of the same vowels:

aÅ
(as in odd)

a
DIPTHONGS

Two vowels pronounced together as one sound make a dipthong.

There are six dipthongs in Latin:

ae (as in my)
au (as in cow)

ei

(as in pay)

eu (as read1)
oe (as in boy)

ui (as in win)

As vowel sounds, dipthongs are long.

Pronunciation of Latin Words

The accentuation of a Latin word is determined by its second-to-last or penultimate syllable.
1 This diphthong appears mostly in Greek words that have been assimilated into Latin, e.g., Theßæus.

2 This rule is sometimes referred to as the law of the penult, this term being shorthand for the penultimate syllable of a word.

Introduction to the Latin Alphabet and Pronunciation xv

If this syllable is long, then it must be stressed, that is, it receives the accentuation when the word is pronounced. If this syllable is short, the syllable immediately before it is accentuated. (A two-syllable word will always be stressed on the first syllable.)

How is a syllable long? A syllable is long if it has a long vowel or a diphthong, or if the vowel of the syllable is followed by two or more consonants. Otherwise it is short.

ônsula

The second-to-last syllable, -sul-, is short. The vowel u is short, not a diphthong, and followed by only one consonant. Therefore the syllable before it, ôAn-, is accented in pronunciation.

impleAvi

The second syllable -leÅ- is long because it contains a long vowel. Therefore it is accented in pronunciation.

Practice reading aloud the following words. Remember to consider whether the penultimate syllable is long or short.

1. mõÅserat
2. animaÅlia
3. inter
4. nostroÅs
5. animoÅs
6. urbibus
7. ambulaÅmus
8. salve
9. iustitia
10. sanguinis
CHAPTER 1

The Noun

A noun is a word that denotes a person, place, or thing—for example, pig.

Every instance of a Latin noun has the three grammatical properties of number, gender, and case.

Number: Like English nouns, Latin nouns are singular or plural. This difference is shown by a change in the word's form.

e.g., mouse
mice
muÅs
muÅreÅs
pig
pigs
porcus
porcōÂ

Gender: English nouns do not show gender. Latin has three genders—masculine, feminine, and neuter—but usually any given noun will have only one.

While nouns denoting male or female persons often show the expected gender, these genders do not necessarily correspond to the noun's meaning.

e.g., feÅmina, woman, is feminine
vir, man, is masculine
saxum, rock, is neuter

but

servituÅs, slavery, is feminine
liber, book, is masculine
forum, forum, is neuter

Case is the means by which a noun shows its meaning in a sentence. English sentences create meaning through word order. A noun shows its grammatical function by its position in the sentence or from its combination with other words such as prepositions. For example:

The pig bites the dog.

In this sentence, the pig is the subject and the dog the direct object.

The dog bites the pig.
CHAPTER 1 The Noun

Here the relationship has been reversed; the dog is the subject and the pig the direct object.

However, although their grammatical functions in the two sentences are different, the nouns pig and dog do not change their form to reflect such differences in meaning.

Latin nouns show these different kinds of meaning by changing their form, and the possible forms they can take are called cases.

Such a change in form to express meaning is called inflection, and Latin is an inflected language.

Latin has six cases. This is to say that there are six basic categories of meaning for nouns in sentences. They show these cases through their endings.

(The explanations that follow are merely a preliminary introduction. The cases will be treated more thoroughly in the sections on noun syntax.)

The Nominative Case

A noun takes the nominative case when it is the subject of a sentence: The dog bites the pig.

If this sentence were translated into Latin, the noun dog would take the nominative case.

A noun also takes the nominative case when it is the predicate of a sentence. A predicate is a word linked to the subject in a kind of grammatical equation.

Wine is honey.

The verb acts as an equals sign, saying essentially X = Y, where X is the subject and Y is the predicate.

If this sentence were translated into Latin, the noun wine would take the nominative case because it is the subject (X), and honey would take the nominative because it is the predicate (Y).

The Genitive Case

This case does much the same work as the English preposition of.

The milk of goats is good.

Translated into Latin, the noun goats would take the genitive case. This case includes the meaning of the preposition of, so this word would not be translated.

The genitive case also shows possession. For example: the man's house

The possessive noun man's in Latin would take the genitive case.

The English form man's itself shows inflection through the ending 's. You could say that the form man's is the genitive case of the English noun man.
The Dative Case

This case does much the same work as the English prepositions to and for. It expresses the person(s) or, less usually, the thing(s) affected by the sentence or some part of it:

The milk of goats is good for children.

Translated into Latin, for children would be expressed by the word children in the dative case. The preposition would not be translated since the meaning for is included in the dative case.

The dative case expresses the indirect object of a sentence.

I gave the money to Erskine.

In Latin Erskine would take the dative case.

The Accusative Case

The accusative case expresses the direct object of a sentence.

The pig bites the dog.

Porcus canem mordet.

Since it is the direct object, the noun dog takes the accusative case, canem. Pig takes the nominative case, porcus, since it is the subject.

The dog bites the pig.

Canis porcum mordet.

In this sentence it is the dog which takes the nominative case, canis, since it is the subject, and the pig, as the direct object, which takes the accusative case, porcum.

This grammatical relationship is visibly expressed through case. Therefore it is not the word order that tells you the meaning of the sentence but the endings of the words.

The accusative case is also governed by certain prepositions, particularly those with a sense of (motion) toward or against.

Against the heathens.

Into the sea

In Latin, heathens and sea will take the accusative case. (See Chapter 5.)

The Ablative Case

This case does the work of the English prepositions from=with=in=by.

With malice

In agony

Hit by a car

1 To in the sense of ```He seems nice to me'' but not in the sense of `Go to Paris.'

4

CHAPTER 1 The Noun
All these nouns in Latin will take the ablative case.

This case has many uses, some of which will require prepositions and some of which will not. These will be presented more fully in Chapters 5 and 6.

The Vocative Case

This case is used only for direct address.

Son, put down that hammer.

Son would take the vocative case.

Latin also retains the vestiges of another case, the locative, used, as its name suggests, to express location. It is found only for nouns denoting the names of cities, towns, islands, and for the expressions "at home" and "in the country."

As stated before, these are merely introductory descriptions. Case usages will be explained in the sections dealing with noun syntax.

Exercise

1. Identify which case each noun in the following sentence would take in Latin.

Mom, I gave the goat's milk to Douglas with my own hands.

1. Mom
   __________

2. I
   __________

3. goat's
   __________

4. milk
   __________

5. Douglas
   __________

6. hands
   __________

Declension

A declension is a system of endings used to express the different cases described above.

There are five different declensions of Latin nouns, though any given noun belongs to only one.

THE FIRST DECLENSION

Here are some sample nouns of the first declension:

puella, puellae, f.
Given above (in order) are the nominative singular, the genitive singular, the gender, and the meaning. This is the standard format found in dictionaries and textbooks.

The genitive form tells you what declension a noun belongs to and provides the stem for generating all the other case forms. As stated above, a declension is a system of endings for a noun to express case.

All 1st-declension nouns have the ending -ae in the genitive singular. The endings for the rest of the declension are as follows: Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-aē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>-ae</td>
<td>-aērum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>-ae</td>
<td>-ōās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>-am</td>
<td>-aās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>-aĀ</td>
<td>-ōās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocative</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To decline a noun of the 1st declension, that is, to generate all of its possible case forms, these endings are added to the noun's stem. The stem is obtained by removing the ending -ae from the noun's genitive singular form.

For the noun agricola, agricolae, m., therefore, the stem is agricol-. It declines as follows:

**Singular**

**Translation**

Nominative=vocative

agricola

a farmer (subject)

Genitive

agricolae

of a farmer, a farmer's

Dative

agricolae

to=for a farmer

Accusative

agricolam

a farmer (direct object)

Ablative

agricolaÅ

from=with=in=by a farmer

**Plural**

**Translation**

Nominative=vocative

agricolae

farmers (subject)

Genitive

agricolaÅrum

of farmers, farmers'

Dative

agricolòAs
to=for farmers
Accusative
agricolaēs
farmers (direct object)
Ablative
agricolōēs
from=with=in=by farmers

Nouns of the 1st declension are predominantly feminine. The exceptions are those nouns that denote masculine agents. There are no neuter nouns in the 1st declension.

2 With the exception of certain second-declension nouns, the nominative and vocative cases are identical and will be listed together. The locative singular for the 1st declension ends in -ae; the plural ends in -ōēs: Roāmae, at Rome; AthēAnōēs, at Athens.

CHAPTER 1 The Noun

Some more sample 1st-declension nouns:
aqua, aquae, f.
water
poeĀta, poeĀta, m.
poet
terra, terrae, f.
land
fōĀlia, fōĀliae, f.
daughter
luĀna, luĀnae, f.
moon
nauta, nautae, m.
sailor
luxuria, luxuriae, f.
luxury
feĀmina, feĀminae, f.
woman
amōĀcitia, amōĀcitiae, f.
friendship
pecūnia, pecūniae, f.
money
avařitia, avařitiae, f.
avarice
ðånula, ðånulae, f.
island

Exercises
2. Fully decline the noun aqua, aquae, f.

Singular
Plural
Nominative=vocative

Genitive

Dative

Accusative

Ablative

3. Change the following from singular to plural. (If there are two possibilities, give both.)

1. puellam

2. meðansae
3. poëta

4. terræ

5. aquæ

6. fémineæ

7. terram

8. pecúnia

—

4. Change the following from plural to singular. (If there are two possibilities, give both.)

1. puellæ

2. terræs

3. poëtōs

4. aquárum

5. meánsōs

6. terrae

7. ṍnsulárum

8. luánæ

—

CHAPTER 1 The Noun
THE SECOND DECLENSION

All second-declension nouns have the ending -ōÅ in the genitive singular.

Here are some sample second-declension nouns:

ventus, ventōÅ, m.
wind

vir, virōÅ, m.
man

bellum, bellōÅ, n.
war

regnum, regnōÅ, n.
kingdom

puer, puerōÅ, m.
boy

amōÅcus, amōÅcōÅ, m.
friend

gladius, gladiōÅ, m.
sword

numerus, numerōÅ, m.
number

gaudium, gaudiōÅ, n.
joy

liber, librōÅ, m.
book

servus, servōÅ, m.
slave

saxum, saxōÅ, n.
rock

As you can see, there is considerable variety of form in the nominative singular of the second declension. It is for this reason that the genitive singular form of a noun serves both to define its declension and to provide the stem for its forms.
The stem for all Latin nouns, regardless of declension, is obtained by removing the ending from the genitive singular form. For example: Noun

Stem
ventus, ventōÅ, m.
vent-
vir, virōÅ, m.
vir-
bellum, bellōÅ, n.
bell-
fōÅlius, fōÅliōÅ, m.
fōÅli-

The second declension declines as follows:

Singular
Nom.
ventus
vir
bellum
fōÅlius
Gen.
ventōÅ
virōÅ
bellōÅ
fōÅliōÅ
Dat.
ventoÅ
vōÅroÅ
belloÅ
fōÅlioÅ
Acc.
ventum
virum
bellum
fōÅlium
Abl.
ventoÅ
viroÅ
belloÅ
fōÅlioÅ
Voc.
vente
vir
bellum
fōÅliōÅ
Plural
Nom.=voc.
ventōÅ
virōÅ
bella
fōÅliōÅ
Gen.
ventoÅrum
viroÅrum
belloÅrum
fōÅlioÅrum
Dat.
ventōÅs
vōÅroÅs
bellōÅs
fōÅliōÅs
Acc.
ventoÅs
CHAPTER 1 The Noun

Note: Second-declension nouns in -us and -ius are the only Latin nouns whose vocative is different from the nominative.3

For all declensions, the nominative and accusative forms of neuter nouns are identical.

Nouns of the second declension are predominantly masculine and neuter.

Exercises

5. Fully decline the following nouns:

1. saxum, saxō, n.

Singular

Plural

Nominative=vocative

Genitive

Dative

Accusative

viroās
bella
fōālioās
Abl.
ventōās
virōās
bellōās
fōāliōās

8
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>puer</td>
<td>puerōÅ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>puer</td>
<td>puerōÅ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. puer, puerōÅ, m.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>amōAcus</td>
<td>amōAcōÅ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>amōAcus</td>
<td>amōAcōÅ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. amōAcus, amōAcōÅ, m.
Dative

Accusative

Ablative

Vocative

6. Change the following from singular to plural. (If there are two possibilities, give both.)

1. regnum

2. gladiō

3. viroō

3 The locative singular ends in -ō, the plural in ōs: Tarentō, at Tarentum; Delphōs, at Delphi.

CHAPTER 1 The Noun

9

4. liber

5. numerum

6. gaudium

7. puer

8. regnō
7. Change the following from plural to singular. (If there are two possibilities, give both.)

1. viroÅrum

2. gladioÅs

3. bella

4. ventõÅ

5. amõÅcõÅs

6. virõÅ

7. numeroÅs

8. regnoÅrum

THE THIRD DECLENSION

Nouns of the third declension have the genitive singular ending -is.

There are two varieties of third-declension noun, i-stem and non±i-stem, with only minor differences between them. The difference amounts to the appearance of an i at certain points of the i-stem declension where it does not appear in the non±

i-stem declension.

Here are some sample third-declension nouns:

mõÅles, mõÅlitis, m.
soldier

sõÅdus, sõÅderis, n.
star

ratioÅ, ratioÅnis, f.
reasoning

voÅx, voÅcis, f.
As you can see, the third declension has nouns of every gender.

There is great variety in the nominative singular, but all genitive singulars end in -is. The stem is obtained by removing this ending -is from the genitive singular form.
They decline as follows:

Singular
Nom.=voc.
mõÅles
nex
ratioÅ
sõÅdus
Gen.
mõÅlitis
necis
ratioÅnis
sõÅderis
Dat.
mõÅlitiõÅ
necõÅ
ratioÅnõÅ
sõÅderõÅ
Acc.
mõÅlitem
necem
ratioÅnem
sõÅdus
Abl.
mõÅlite
nece
ratioÅne
sidere
Plural
Nom.=voc.
mõÅliteÅs
neceÅs
ratioÅneÅs
sõÅdera
Gen.
mõÅlitum
necum
ratioÅnum
sõÅderum
Dat.
mõÅlitibus
necibus
ratioÅnibus
sõÅderibus
Acc.
mõÅliteÅs
neceÅs
ratioÅneÅs
sõÅdera
Abl.
mõÅlitibus
necibus
ratioÅnibus
sõÅderibus
i-Stem Nouns
Here are some sample i-stem nouns of the third declension: moÅns, montis, -ium, m.
mountain
urbs, urbis, -ium, f.
city
meÅns, mentis, -ium, f.
mind
animal, animaÅlis, -ium, n.
animal
nox, noctis, -ōÅum, f.
night
naÅvis, naÅvis, -ium, f.
ship
mare, maris, -ium, n.
sea
i-stem nouns come formatted with an extra element, -ium. This is the genitive plural ending for these nouns, and it is included to indicate that such nouns are i-stem.
They decline as follows:
Singular
Nom.=voc.
moÅns
urbs
animal
Gen.
montis
urbis
animaÅlis
Dat.
montōÅ
urbōÅ
animaÅlōÅ
Acc.
montem
urbem
animal
Abl.
monte
urbe
anima

CHAPTER 1 The Noun

Plural
Nom.=voc.
monteÅs
urbeÅs
animaÅlia
Gen.
montium
urbium
animaÅlium
Dat.
montibus
urbibus
animaÅlibus
Acc.
monteÅs, -ôÅs
urbeÅs, -ôÅs
animaÅlia
Abl.
montibus
urbibus
animaÅlibus

Note: All i-stem nouns have -ium in the genitive plural.

Masculine and feminine i-stem nouns have an alternate ending -ôÅs in the accusative plural. (There is no difference in meaning.) Neuter i-stem nouns have
±ð in the ablative singular and -ia in the nominative and accusative plural. The locative is identical to the ablative.

Exercises

8. Fully decline the following nouns:

1. corpus, corporis, n.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative=vocative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. meÅns, mentis, -ium, f.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative=vocative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
9. Change the following from singular to plural. (If there are two possibilities, give both.)

3. dolor, doloArís, m.

Singular

Plural

Nominative=vocative

Genitive

Dative

Accusative

Ablative
1. urbem

2. reÅgõÅ

3. voÅcis

4. animaÅlõÅ

5. ¯uÅmen

6. urbis

7. nox

8. amoÅre

10. Change the following from plural to singular. (If there are two possibilities, give both.)

1. sõÅdera

2. voluptaÅtibus

3. urbeÅs

4. doloÅrum

5. montõÅs

6. mentium

7. animaÅlia
The Fourth Declension

Fourth-declension nouns have the ending -ium in the genitive singular.

Here are some sample fourth-declension nouns:

- spōritus, spōrituÅs, m. (breath)
- fruÅctus, fruÅctuÅs, m. (enjoyment)
- uÅsus, uÅsuÅs, m. (use)
- cornuÅ, cornuÅs, n. (horn)
- genuÅ, genuÅs, n. (knee)
- cursus, cursuÅs, m. (course)
- manus, manuÅs, f. (hand)
- ¯uctus, ¯uctuÅs, m. (wave)

They decline as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>uÅsus</td>
<td>uÅsuÅs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cornuÅ</td>
<td>cornuÅs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

8. naÅvium

9. amoÅribus
CHAPTER 1 The Noun

13

THE FIFTH DECLENSION

Fifth-declension nouns have the ending -eõÅ or -eÅõÅ in the genitive singular, depending on whether the stem ends in a consonant or vowel.

Here are some sample fifth-declension nouns:

reÅs, reõÅ, f.
thing
dieÅs, dieÅõÅ, m.

day
@deÅs, @deõÅ, f.
faith
specieÅs, specieÂôÅ, m.
appearance
They decline as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.=Voc.</td>
<td>reÅs</td>
<td>dieÅs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>reÅs</td>
<td>dieÅs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>reõÅ</td>
<td>dieÂôÅ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>reÅrum</td>
<td>dieÅrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>reõÅ</td>
<td>dieÂôÅ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>reÅbus</td>
<td>dieÅbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>rem</td>
<td>diem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>reÅs</td>
<td>dieÅs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>re</td>
<td>dieÂ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
11. Fully decline the following nouns:

1. ®de Ås, ®de òÅ, f.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative=vocative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. manus, manu Ås, f.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative=vocative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12. Change the following from singular to plural. (If there are multiple possibilities, give all.)

1. reÅs

2. dieÅõÅ

3. fruÅctuÅs

13. Change the following from plural to singular. (If there are multiple possibilities, give all.)

1. genuÅ

2. uÅsuum

3. reÅrum
A Few Irregular Nouns

The noun võÃs, f. (force, violence) declines as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>võÃs</td>
<td>võÃreÃs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>Ð</td>
<td>võÃrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>Ð</td>
<td>võÃribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>võÃreÃs, -õÃs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>võÃ</td>
<td>võÃribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The noun domus, domuÃs or domõÃ, f. (house, home) declines as follows. This noun has both second- and fourth-declension forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>domus</td>
<td>domuÃs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>domuÃs</td>
<td>domõÃ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
domuum=domoÅrum
Dative
domuÅÅ=domoÅ
domibus
Accusative
domum
domuÅÅ=domoÅÅ
Ablative
domuÅÅ=domoÅ Å
domibus

The locative for this noun is domoÅÅ.

The noun deus, deoÅ, m. (god) declines as follows:
Singular
Plural
Nominative=vocative
deus
dôÅ Å
Genitive
deoÅ Å
deoÅÅ=deum

Dative
deoÅ Å
dôÅ Å Å
Accusative
deum
deoÅ Å Å
Ablative
deoÅ Å
dôÅ Å Å

4 In the plural this noun means `bodily strength.'
CHAPTER 1 The Noun

15

Exercises

14. Based on the paradigms given, identify the declension for each of the following nouns:

1. reÅgõÅna, reÅgõÅnae, f.
   __________

2. specieÅs, specieÅõÅ, f.
   __________

3. lõÅtus, lõÅtoris, n.
   __________

4. exemplar, exemplaÅris, -ium n.
   __________

5. currus, curruÅs, m.
   __________

6. ager, agrõÅ, m.
   __________

7. saxum, saxõÅ, n.
   __________

8. nauta, nautae, m.
   __________

9. eques, equitis, m.
   __________

10. lõÅbertaÅs, lõÅbertaÅtis, f.
    __________

15. Translate the following forms according to their case and number: 1. lõÅbertaÅtem
    __________

2. equitum
    __________

3. saxõÅs (two poss.)
    __________
4. poëtaae (three poss.)

_____________

5. agroÅs

_____________

6. exemplar

_____________

7. lōÅtoris

_____________

8. specieÅoÅ

_____________

9. reÅgōÅnōÅs

_____________

10. specieÅs lōÅbertaÅtis

_____________

11. reÅx poeÅtaÅrum

_____________

12. saxa agrōÅ

_____________

16. Change the following from singular to plural. (If there are two possibilities, give both.)

1. currum

_____________

2. exemplaÅrōÅ _____________

3. reÅgōÅnae

_____________

4. equite

_____________

5. lōÅtus

_____________

17. Change the following from plural to singular. (If there are two possibilities, give both.)

1. poeÅtōÅs
CHAPTER 1 The Noun

18. On a separate sheet of paper, decline the following nouns: 1. puella, puellae, f.
2. dolor, doloÅris, m.
3. bellum, bellõÅ, n.
4. spõÅritus, spõÅrituÅs, m.
5. reÅs, reõÅ, f.
6. urbs, urbis, -ium, f.

CHAPTER 2

The Adjective

An adjective is a word that modi®es or describes a noun.

For an adjective to modify a noun in Latin, it must agree with it in gender, number, and case. Remember that gender is a permanent characteristic of a noun; only case and number are shown by ending. An adjective by itself has no gender, but re¯ects the gender of the noun that it modi®es. Thus adjectives must be capable of showing each of the three genders.

Like nouns, adjectives belong to declensions from which they take their endings.

Adjectives fall into two groups: ®rst-second-declension adjectives and third-declension adjectives.

First-Second-Declension Adjectives

First-second-declension adjectives take their endings from the ®rst and second declensions of nouns. That is, they take their masculine and neuter endings from the second declension and their feminine endings from the ®rst.

Here are some examples of ®rst-second-declension adjectives: bonus, bona, bonum
good
malus, mala, malum
bad
duÅrus, duÅra, duÅrum
hard
miser, misera, miserum
wretched
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum
beautiful
dexter, dextra, dextrum
right
sinister, sinistra, sinistrum
left
frôÅgidus, frôÅgida, frôÅgidum
cold
magnus, magna, magnum
large, great

Given above are the nominative singular masculine, feminine, and neuter.
The stem for declining the adjective is obtained by dropping the ending -a from the feminine nominative singular.

17

Copyright 2002 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. Click Here for Terms of Use.

CHAPTER 2 The Adjective

As stated, these adjectives decline using the endings of the ¹rst and second declensions. They use the endings of the ¹rst declension for their feminine forms and the second declension for their masculine and neuter forms.
The stem for malus, mala, malum is mal-. It declines as follows: Masculine

Feminine
Neuter
Singular
Nominative
malus
mala
malum
Genitive
malōÂ
maeae
malōÂ
Dative
maloÂ
maeae
maloÂ
Accusative
malum
malam
malum
Ablative
maloÂ
malaÂ
maloÂ
maloÂ
Vocative
male
mala
malum
Plural
Nominative=vocative
malōÂ
maeae
mala
Genitive
maloÁrum
malaÁrum
maloÁrum
maloÁrum
Dative
malōÂs
The stem for miser, misera, miserum is miser-. Such adjectives have -er in the masculine nominative and vocative singular. Otherwise, they decline as malus above.

Exercises

1. Choose the correct form of the adjective magnus, magna, magnum to agree with the following nouns. (If there is more than one possibility, give all.)

1. puer
   __________

2. urbis
   __________

3. reÅgõÅnõÅs
   __________

4. agricolaÅrum
   __________

5. amoÅre
   __________

6. cursuÅs
   __________

7. reÅs
   __________

8. uctuum
   __________
CHAPTER 2 The Adjective

2. Decline fully the following phrases:

1. reÁx bonus

Singular
Plural
Nominative=vocative

Genitive

Dative

Accusative

Ablative

2. urbs pulchra

Singular
Plural
Nominative=vocative
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>vocative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. bellum duÅrum
Third-Declension Adjectives

Third-declension adjectives take their endings from the third declension.

Depending on the number of forms they show in the nominative singular, they are divided into adjectives of three terminations, two terminations, or one termination.

THREE-TERMINATION ADJECTIVES

aÅcer, aÅcris, aÅcre
sharp
celer, celeris, celere
swift

Given are the nominative singular masculine, feminine, and neuter. The stem is obtained by dropping the ending -is from the feminine nominative singular. They decline as follows:

CHAPTER 2 The Adjective

Masculine
Feminine
Neuter
Singular
Nom.=voc.
aÅcer
aÅcris
aÅcre
Gen.
aÅcris
aÅcris
aÅcris
Dat.
aÅcrõÅ
aÅcrõÅ
aÅcrõÅ
Acc.

Acre

Abl.
AcrōA
AcrōA
AcrōA

Plural
Nom.=Voc.
AcreÅs
AcreÅs
Acria

Gen.
acrium
acrium
acrium
Dat.
acribus
acribus
acribus

Acc.
acreÅs, -oÅs
aacreÅs, -oÅs
acria

Abl.
acribus
acribus
acribus

Note: Third-declension adjectives decline like i-stem nouns, showing
-iurn in the genitive plural
-ia in the nominative and accusative plural neuter

The alternate ending -ōÅs in the masculine and feminine accusative plural. The ablative singular ending for all genders is -ōÅ.

**TWO-TERMINATION ADJECTIVES**

omnis, omne

every, all

noÅbilis, noÅbile

noble

facilis, facile

easy

grandis, grande

big

Given are the masculine-feminine and neuter singular. This is to say that two-termination adjectives use the same form for the masculine and feminine. The stem is still obtained by removing the ending -is from the feminine (and, in this case, masculine) nominative singular.

They decline as follows:

**Masculine=feminine**

Neuter

Singular

Nom.=voc.

omnis

omne

Gen.

omnis

omnis

Dat.

omnōÅ

omnōÅ

CHAPTER 2 The Adjective

21

Acc.

omnem
omne
Abl.
omnō Å
omnia
Plural
Nom.=voc.
omne Ås
omnia
Gen.
omnium
omnium
Dat.
omnibus
omnibus
Acc.
omne Ås, -ō Ås
omnia
Abl.
omnibus
omnibus
ONE-TERMINATION ADJECTIVES
simplex, simplicis
simple
audax, audaÅcis
bold
deÅme Åns, deÅmentis
insane

One-termination adjectives do not distinguish gender at all in the nominative singular. They do, however, distinguish the neuter from the masculine=feminine at other points in the declension.

Given are the nominative and genitive singular for all three genders. The stem is obtained by removing the ending -is from the genitive singular form.
They decline as follows:

Masculine=feminine

Neuter

Singular
Nom. = voc.
audax

Gen.
audacis

Dat.
audacis

Acc.
audacem

Abl.
audacem

Plural
Nom. = voc.
audaceas

Gen.
audacieum

Dat.
audacibus

Acc.
Exercises

3. Choose the correct form of noÅbilis, noÅbile to modify the following nouns. (If there is more than one possibility, give all.) 22

CHAPTER 2 The Adjective

1. reÅgõÅ
   ___________

2. urbibus
   ___________

3. saxum
   ___________

4. puellaÅrum __________

5. amoÅreÅs
   ___________

6. bella
   ___________

7. animaÅlis __________

8. specieÅõÅ
   ___________

9. rem
   ___________

10. poeÅtaÅs
    ___________

4. Fully decline the following phrases:

1. puella deÅmeÅns

Singular

Plural
Nominative=vocative

Genitive

Dative

Accusative

Ablative

2. reÅs facilis

Singula

Plural

Nominative=vocative

Genitive

Dative

Accusative
5. Choose the correct forms of the adjectives malus, -a, -um and grandis, -e to agree with the following nouns:

malus

grandis

1. avaÅritiae

2. fõÅliõÅ

3. bella

4. animaÅlibus

5. urbium

6. amoÅreÅs

7. ventus

8. manuÅs
CHAPTER 2 The Adjective

14. montōs

Adjectives with the Genitive

Singular in -ōus

There is a group of nine adjectives belonging essentially to the 1rst-second declension with the slight irregularity of taking -ōus in the genitive singular and -ō in the dative singular. They are:

alius, alia, aliud

another

alter, altera, alterum
the other (of two)
uter, utra, utrum
which (of two)
neuter, neutra, neutrum
neither
ullus, ulla, ullum
any
nullus, nulla, nullum
no, none
soÂlus, soÂla, soÂlum
only
toÂtus, toÂta, totum
whole
uÂnus, uÂna, uÂnum
one
They decline as follows:
Masculine
Feminine
Neuter
Singular
Nom.=voc.
uÂnus
uÂna
uÂnum
Gen.
uÂnõÂus
uÂnõÂus
uÂnõÂus
uÂnõÂus
Dat.
uÂnõâ
In the plural these adjectives decline as regular first-second-declension adjectives.

Note: Only alius, alia, aliud ends in -ud in the neuter nominative and accusative singular. The genitive singular for this adjective, which would have been the ungainly aliō̄us, is supplied by alterō̄us. All the others decline as uĀnum above.

Exercise

6. Choose the correct form of the adjective toĀtus, ±a, ±um to agree with the following nouns. (If there is more than one possibility, give all.)

1. virō̄

2. urbe

3. moĀns

4. mentis

5. meĀnsae

6. reō̄

7. belloĀ
Comparison of Adjectives

Adjectives are said to have three degrees:

The positive, e.g.,

fat

The comparative, e.g.,

fatter

The superlative, e.g.,

fattest

So far we have looked only at formations of the positive degree. To form the comparative and superlative degrees for any adjective, the same stem is used as is used for the positive.

THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE

The comparative degree is formed as a two-termination adjective of the third declension. For example, the comparative of duÅrus, -a, -um (hard) is duÅrior, duÅrius

harder

It declines as follows:

Masculine=feminine

Neuter

Singular

Nom.=voc.

duÅrior
duÅrius

Gen.

duÅrioÅris
duÅrioÅris

Dat.

duÅrioÅrõÅ
duÅrioÅrõÅ

Acc.

duÅrioÅrem
duÅrius

Abl.
duarioÅrõÅ, -e
duarioÅrõÅ, -eÅ
Plural
Nom.=voc.
duarioÅreÅs
duarioÅra
Gen.
duarioÅrum
duarioÅrum
Dat.
duarioÅribus
duarioÅribus
Acc.
duarioÅreÅs
duarioÅra
Abl.
duarioÅribus
duarioÅribus

Note: The comparative degree declines more like a third-declension noun than adjective; all i-stem features are lacking.

The ablative singular ending may be -õÅ or -e.

CHAPTER 2 The Adjective

25

Exercise

7. Decline the phrase poeÅta grandior.

Singular

Plural

Nominative=vocative

Genitive
THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE

The superlative degree is formed by adding the ending -issimus, -a, -um to the stem.

It declines as a regular first-second-declension adjective: duūrissimus, duūrissima, duūrissimum

hardest

Adjectives ending in -er in the masculine nominative singular form the superlative by adding -rimus directly to this form:

pulcherrimus, -a, -um

most beautiful

miserrimus, -a, -um

most wretched

celerrimus, -a, -um

swiftest

There are six adjectives ending in -lis that form the superlative by adding -limus, -a, -um to the stem:

gracillimus, -a, -um

most slender

These are:

facilis, facile

easy

difícilis, difícile
dif®cult
similis, simile
similar
dissimilis, dissimile
dissimilar
humilis, humile
humble
gracilis, gracile
slender

Their comparatives are regular.

Exercises
8. Decline the following phrases.
1. re®As facillima

Singular
Plural
Nominative=vocative

Genitive

Dative

Accusative

Ablative
Some adjectives do not form their comparative and superlative degrees in the regular manner.

**Positive**

**Comparative**

**Superlative**

bonus, -a, -um
melior, melius
optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um
peior, peius
pessimus, -a, -um
magnus, -a, -um
maior, maius
maximus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um
minor, minus
minimus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um
pluÅs, pluÅris1
pluÅrimus, -a, -um

9. Translate the following phrases:
1. spôÅritus acer
_______________________________

2. voÅcÅs humillimae
_______________________________

3. reÅx duÅrissimus
_______________________________

4. luxuria maxima
_______________________________

5. ®deÅs minima
_______________________________

6. meÅns melior
_______________________________

7. ventus optimus
_______________________________

8. fôÅlius maior
_______________________________

9. gaudium deÅmentius
_______________________________

10. libertaÅs nobilissima
_______________________________
11. naÃvium pulcherrimaÃrum _______________________________
12. animaÃlis pessimÃ­
_______________________________

1 PluÃ­s does not decline normally. It is used as a noun.

CHAPTER 3
Pronouns and
Adjectives

A pronoun stands in the place of a noun that is itself understood or named in the context of the pronoun's usage.

For example, normally in such sentences as `It's good'' or ```That's great,' we know what `that'' and `it'' refer to. `I,' `you,' and so on, when used correctly, are similarly clear in their reference.

Personal Pronouns
I
you
we
you (pl.)
Nom.
ego
tuÃ­
noÃ­s
voÃ­s
Gen.
meÃ­
tuoÃ­
nostrum=nostroÃ­
vestrum=vestroÃ­
Dat.
mihi	

1  PluÃ­s does not decline normally. It is used as a noun.
There is no separate third-person personal pronoun in Latin. It is supplied by the demonstrative is, ea, id.

Personal pronouns in Latin function just as they do in English. However, they are not required as subjects to make an otherwise subjectless verb form complete in meaning. Their use is often emphatic.

1 Of these two pairs, nostrum and vestrum are used as partitive genitives, nostrô and vestrô as objective genitives.

See Noun Syntax, p. 80.

Re¯exive Pronouns

A re¯exive pronoun is a pronoun that refers to the subject of the sentence or clause in which it occurs. In the ®rst and second persons, it is identical to the personal pronoun. However, there is a third-person re¯exive pronoun in
Latin: Nom.

Ð

Gen.

suõÅ

Dat.

sibi

Acc.

seÅ

Abl.

seÅ

This pronoun may be masculine, feminine, neuter, singular, or plural. There is no nominative because in order for the pronoun to be re¯exive, it must refer to the subject. It cannot be the subject itself.

Exercise

2. Supply the correct form of the re¯exive pronoun as the direct object for the following sentences:
1. _____________ amaÅmus.
2. omneÅs homineÅs _____________ amant.
3. _____________ amaÅtis.
4. ReAgõÅna bona _____________ amat.

Possessive Adjectives

Related to personal and re¯exive pronouns are possessive adjectives: meus, mea, meum

my
tuus, tua, tuum

your

noster, nostra, nostrum

our

vester, vestra, vestrum

your (pl.)
suus, sua, suum

his, her, their

These conjugate as regular rst-second-declension adjectives.

CHAPTER 3 Pronouns and Adjectives
Personal and reflexive pronouns do not show gender in themselves, though they will in context when modified by adjectives.

There are other pronouns, however, that do refer specifically to nouns. Since Latin nouns show gender, number, and case, so will these pronouns. This makes them much closer to adjectives. In fact, with the exception of personal and reflexive pronouns, Latin pronouns are adjectives—rather, they are words that can be either adjective or pronoun, depending on their usage.

If they modify nouns—that is, appear with them, agreeing in gender, number, and case—then they are adjectives. If they only refer to them, without the nouns appearing with them, they are pronouns.

In some cases, there are slight differences of declension corresponding to these differences of usage.

Demonstratives

The demonstrative pronouns—adjectives point out something: hic, haec, hoc

this

ille, illa, illud

that

is, ea, id

this, that (unemphatic)

ōdēm, eadem, idem

the same

iste, ista, istud

that

ipse, ipsa, ipsum

self

They decline the same way whether used as adjectives or pronouns: Singular

Plural

Masc.

Fem.

Neuter

Masc.

Fem.

Neuter

Nom. hic
haec
hoc
hōÅ
hae
haec
Gen. huius
huius
huius
hōÅrum
haÅrum
hoÅrum
Dat. huic
huic
huic
hōÅs
hōÅs
hōÅs
Acc. hunc
hanc
hoc
hoÅs
haÅs
haec
Abl. hoÅc
haÅc
hoÅc
hōÅs
hōÅs
hōÅs
Nom. ille
illa
illud
illōÄ
illae
illa
Gen. illōÄus
illōÄus
illōÄus
illoÄrum
illaÄrum
illoÄrum
Dat. illōÄ
illōÄ
illōÄ
illōÄs
illōÄs
illōÄs
Acc. illum
illam
illud
illoÄs
illaÄs
illa
Abl. illoÄ
illaÄ
illoÄ
illōÄ
illōÄs
illōÄs
illōÄs
illōÄs
Nom. is
ea
id
eōA, iōA
eae
ea
Gen. eĀius
eĀius
eĀius
eōArum
eaArum
eōArum
2 This demonstrative often implies contempt.
30
CHAPTER 3 Pronouns and Adjectives
Dat. eōA
eōA
eōA
eōAs, iōAs
eōAs, iōAs
eōAs, iōAs
Acc. eum
eam
id
eoAs
eaAs
ea
Abl. eoA
eaA
eoA
eōAs, iōAs
Nom. ódem
eadem idem
eôdem=
eadem

Gen. êiusdem eiusdem eiusdem
eôrundem eaôrundem eoûrundem

Dat. eôdem
eôdem
eôdem
eôdem=
eôdem=
eôdem=
eôdem=
ôdem
ôdsdem
ôdem
ôdsdsem
Acc. eundem eandem idem
eôdsdsem
eôsdsdsem
eôsdsdsem
eôsdsdsem=
eôsdsdsem=
eôsdsdsem=
eôsdsdsem=
ôsdsdsem
ôsdsdsem
ôsdsdsem
ôsdsdsem
Abl. eôAdem eaôAdem eôAdem
eôAdem=
eôAdem=
eôAdem=
eôAdem=
ôAdem
ôAdem
ôAdem
ôAdem
ôAdem
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Ablative</th>
<th>Accusative</th>
<th>Dative</th>
<th>Ablative Case</th>
<th>Vocative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Istum</td>
<td>istum</td>
<td>istum</td>
<td>istum</td>
<td>istum</td>
<td>istum</td>
<td>istum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genus</td>
<td>istumus</td>
<td>istumus</td>
<td>istumus</td>
<td>istumus</td>
<td>istumus</td>
<td>istumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>istum</td>
<td>istum</td>
<td>istum</td>
<td>istum</td>
<td>istum</td>
<td>istum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>istumus</td>
<td>istumus</td>
<td>istumus</td>
<td>istumus</td>
<td>istumus</td>
<td>istumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>istum</td>
<td>istum</td>
<td>istum</td>
<td>istum</td>
<td>istum</td>
<td>istum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Nom. ipse
ipsa
ipsum
ipsa
Gen. ipsa
ipsa
ipsa
ipsum
ipsa
Dat. ipsum
ipsa
ipsa
ipsum
ipsa
ipsum
ipsa
Acc. ipsum
ipsa
ipsa
Abl. ipsum
ipsa
ipsa
ipsa
Note: Sometimes ipse is called an intensifier because it intensifies the force of the word it modifies:

ego ipse id vōōdōō.
I myself saw it.

ego virum ipsum vōōdōō.
I saw the man himself.

Exercises

3. Supply the correct form of the demonstrative adjective in parentheses to agree with the following nouns:

1. ___________ puella (hic, haec, hoc)
2. ___________ montem (ille, illa, illud)
3. ___________ urbium (is, ea, id)
4. ___________ reÅės (ipse, ipsa, ipsum)
5. ___________ fōōlioÅrum (oÅedem, eadem, idem)
6. ___________ ventōÅs (hic, haec, hoc)
7. ___________ reÅgis (is, ea, id)
8. ___________ fruÅctibus (ille, illa, illud)

CHAPTER 3 Pronouns and Adjectives

9. ___________ terraÅs (oÅedem, eadem, idem)
10. ___________ vōÅs (ipse, ipsa, ipsum)

4. Translate the following phrases:

1. illa reÅgōÅna

2. voÅ}s ipsōÅ

3. oÅedom ventus

4. hae puellae

5. illa saxa
6. ille võïvit

7. ipsa venit

8. illa ipsa venit

9. fratrem eïius võïdõï

10. ille võïvet; hic morieïtur

Relatives

The man who lives here is evil.

In this sentence, the word who is a relative pronoun. That is to say, it is a pronoun which refers to a noun in the sentence and also begins a clause of its own.

In the example above, who refers to the noun man. The word to which a relative pronoun refers is called an antecedent.

The clause who lives here is called a relative clause. (For uses of the relative clause, see p. 119.) Relative clauses are introduced by relative pronouns.

In Latin, the relative pronoun declines as follows: Singular

Plural
Masc.
Fem.
Neuter
Masc.
Fem.
Neuter
Nom.
quõï
quae
quod
quõï
quae
quae
Gen.
cuius
cuius
cuius
quorum
quorum
quorum
Dat.
cui
cui
cui
quibus
quibus
quibus
Acc.
quem
quam
quod
quos
quos
quae
Abl.
quos
quos
quos
quos
quibus
quibus
quibus
Interrogatives
Interrogatives are used to ask questions. There is a slight difference in declension between the pronoun and the adjective. The interrogative adjective is identical to the relative pronoun. The interrogative pronoun joins the masculine and feminine in the singular. It declines as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>quid</td>
<td></td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>quid</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>quem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>quid</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>quid</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>quid</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>quoÅ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>quoÅ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>quoÅ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As you can see, it differs from the relative only in the nominative case and in the neuter accusative. The plural declines in the same way as the relative.

Exercise

5. Supply the correct form of the relative=interrogative adjective to agree with the following nouns:

1. ___________ mentõÅ
2. ___________ bellõÅ
3. ___________ amoÅreÅs
4. ___________ servõÅ
5. ___________ nautae
Inde\textsuperscript{nites}

Inde\textsuperscript{nite pronouns=adjectives are not precise in their reference.

aliqu\textsuperscript{o}, al\textsuperscript{a}qua, aliquod (adj.)

some

aliquis, aliquid (pro.)

someone

These decline in the same way as the interrogative, with the pre\textsuperscript{x} ali- added.

qu\textsuperscript{o}dam, quaedam,

a certain (person)

quiddam=quoddam

qu\textsuperscript{o}que, quaeque, quidque (adj.)

each

quisque, quidque (pro.)

each

quisquam, quidquam (quicquam\textsuperscript{3})

anyone, anything

(pro.)\textsuperscript{4}

These decline in the same way as the relative pronoun.

3 Alternative spelling.

4 The adjective corresponding to this pronoun is ullus, -a, -um. See p. 23.

CHAPTER 3 Pronouns and Adjectives

Exercises

6. Supply the correct form of the inde\textsuperscript{nite adjective in parentheses to agree with the following nouns:

1. \underline{\hspace{1cm}} homo\textsuperscript{a} (aliqu\textsuperscript{o}, aliqua, aliquod)
2. _____________ pueròs (quòdque, quaeque, quodque) 3. _____________ reÁguna (quòdAdam, quaedam, quidam)

4. _____________ õuÁminis (aliquò, aliqua, aliquod) 5. _____________ nox (quòdÁque, quaeque, quodque)

7. Translate the following phrases:
1. aliqua pecuÁnia

________________________________

2. quaeque reÁgÅna

________________________________

3. quoddam bellum ________________________________

This page intentionally left blank.

CHAPTER 4

The Verb

Like nouns, Latin verbs are inÁected; that is, they take different endings to express different grammatical meanings. Their inÁection is called conjugation. Just as nouns belong to different declensions, verbs belong to different conjugations, which are systems of endings for the expression of grammatical information. Through these endings Latin verbs show the properties of person, number, voice, mood, and tense.

Person and Number

Person and number refer to the subject of a verb. There are three persons and two numbers:

Singular

Plural

1st

I

we

2nd

you

you (pl.)

3rd

he, she, it

they

Voice

There are two voices: active and passive. These terms refer to whether the subject performs or suffers the action represented by the verb: Active:
I bite
Passive: I am bitten

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

Mood

There are three moods: indicative, subjunctive, and imperative. These refer to the quality of information meant by the verb, i.e., how the listener should understand what is conveyed.

INDICATIVE

The indicative is the mood of facts. It is used for the direct assertion of facts or for questions about them:

He eats.

Does he eat?

SUBJUNCTIVE

The subjunctive is used for uncertainties, possibilities, conditions, indirect questions, and so on, both independently and in a broad range of subordinate clauses.

Its translation often involves modal auxiliaries such as may, might, should, and would;

If I were a rich man, I would buy a red car.

I was afraid he might do that.

In Latin the verbs italicized above would take the subjunctive.

IMPERATIVE

The imperative mood expresses commands:

Eat!

Let them eat cake!

Tense

The tense of a verb expresses the time and aspect of the action that it represents.

Time refers to whether the action takes place in the past, present, or future.

Aspect refers to whether the action is represented as completed or not completed.

For example:

``He has eaten'' expresses a completed action. We know from this verb's tense that the eating is ®nished.

``He is eating'' expresses an action that is not completed.
CHAPTER 4 The Verb

37

Latin has six tenses of the indicative mood, corresponding to these three times and two aspects:

Uncompleted aspect:

(Present)

Present

I eat, I am eating

(Past)

Imperfect

I was eating, I used to eat

(Future)

Future

I will eat, I will be eating

Completed aspect:

(Present)

Perfect

I have eaten, I ate

(Past)

Pluperfect

I had eaten

(Future)

Future perfect

I will have eaten

Note: The perfect tense is capable of expressing an action in present or past time, corresponding to the English uses Ò I ateÓ and Ò I have eaten.Ó In both cases, however, the action is expressed as completed.

There are four tenses of the subjunctive:

Uncompleted

Completed

Present

Perfect

Imperfect
Pluperfect

There are two tenses of the imperative:
Present
Future

Conjugations

Just as nouns belong to different declensions, verbs belong to different conjugations.

The process of conjugating a verb consists of adding inflectional endings to stems in different combinations to show person, number, voice, tense, and mood.

Verbs are learned according to their principal parts. These are the forms that provide the necessary stems for conjugation in all the tenses, moods, and voices. For example:

amoÅ, amaÅre, amaÅvõÅ, amaÅtus
love
teneoÅ, teneÅre, tenuõÅ, tentus
have
dõÅcoÅ, dõÅcere, dõÅxõÅ, dictus
say, tell
capioÅ, capere, ceÅpõÅ, captus
take, capture
audioÅ, audõÅre, audõÅvõÅ, audõÅtus
hear

38

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

The first principal part is the first-person-singular present indicative active of its verb:

amoÅ
I love
teneoÅ
I have

The second principal part is the present infinitive active: amaÅre
to love
teneÅre
to have
The ending for the infinitive is -re. It is the vowel found before this ending that defines to which conjugation a verb belongs. There are four: First-conjugation verbs have

-aÅ- in the second principal part: amaÅre

Second-conjugation verbs have -eÅ- in the second principal part: teneÅre Third-conjugation verbs have -e- in the second principal part: dõÅcere, capere Fourth-conjugation verbs have -õÅ- in the second principal part: audõÅre

The third principal part is the first-person-singular perfect indicative active of its verb:

amaÅvõÅ

I loved, I have loved

ceÅpõÅ

I captured, I have captured

The fourth principal part is the perfect passive participle of its verb:

amaÅtus

(having been) loved
tentus

(having been) held

The Latin verbal system divides conjugations into two systems. The present system comprises

Present, future, and imperfect indicative

Present and imperfect subjunctive

Present and future imperatives

The perfect system comprises

Perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative

Perfect and pluperfect subjunctive

Present System

All tenses of the present system are formed using the present stem. The present stem is obtained by removing the infinitive ending -re from the second principal part.

amaÅ-
teneÅ-
dõÅcic-
capi-
audõÅ-

1 Some grammars give the fourth principal part ending in -tum rather than -tus. However, this will serve the same purpose of providing a stem for the perfect passive system.
Note: In the third conjugation the -e- turns to -i- with the loss of the ending -re.

To indicate person and number, Latin employs two sets of endings, one for the active voice and one for the passive:

### Active personal endings

### Passive personal endings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>-oÅ, -m</td>
<td>-t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>-s</td>
<td>-nt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>-t</td>
<td>-tur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To conjugate the different tenses of the present system, one simply adds these endings to different versions of the present stem.

**PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE**

For the present indicative, the endings above are added to the present stem as is. For the active voice, the active endings are used.

Sing.
1st
amoÅ
 teneoÅ
dôÅcoÅ
capioÅ
 audioÅ
2nd
amaÅs
teneÅs
dôÅcis
capis
 audôÅs
3rd
amat
tenet
dicit
capit
 audit
 Plur.
1st
amaÅmus
teneÅmus
dôÅcimus
capimus
 audôÅmus
2nd
amaÅtis
teneÅtis
dôÅcitis
capitis

audōĀtis
3rd
amant
tenent
dicunt
capiunt
audiunt
amant
they love, they are loving

Notes:
The present indicative active uses the ending -oĀ in the 1rst person singular. The 1rst person singular must be learned separately as a principal part because it cannot be derived automatically from the present stem.

The endings -t and -nt shorten preceding long vowels.

When reading a Latin verb form, analyze its components to identify it: The ending -nt indicates that it is third person plural active and the stem ama- that it is present indicative.

Some third-conjugation verbs have -i- in the 1rst principal part and at other points in their conjugation. These are called i-stem verbs.

PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE
For this voice the passive personal endings are used.
Sing.
1st
amor
teneor
dōĀcor
capior
audiotor
2nd
amaĀris
teneĀris
dōĀceris
caperis
audiōĀris
CHAPTER 4 The Verb

3rd
amaÅtur
teneÅtur
dôÅcitur
capitur
audôÅtur

Plur.
1st
amaÅmur
teneÅmur
dôÅcimur
capimur
audôÅmur

2nd
amaÅminõÅ
teneÅminõÅ
dôÅciminõÅ
capiminõÅ
audôÅminõÅ

3rd
amantur
tenentur
dicuntur
capiantur
audiuntur
Capitūr
he, she, it is captured.

Notes:
The first person singular uses the ending -or.
The second person singular has the alternative ending -re. There is no difference in meaning between this and the ending -ris, but this form is identical in appearance to the second principal part.
The endings -r and -ntur shorten preceding long vowels.
Before the endings -ris and -re, short -i becomes -e.2

Exercises
1. Conjugate the following verbs in the present indicative active.

1. duōcoÅ, duōcere, duōxõÅ, ductus to lead

   Singular
   Plural
   1st
   __________
   __________
   __________

   2nd
   __________
   __________
   __________

   3rd
   __________
   __________
   __________

2. venioÅ, venõÅre, veÅnõÅ, ventus to come

   Singular
   Plural
   1st
   __________
   __________

   2nd
3. iacio, iacere, iacēō, iactus to hurl

      Singular

Plural

1st

2nd

3rd

2 This is visible in the second principal part of third-conjugation verbs. When the -re is removed to form the present stem, the -e reverts to -i.

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

41

2. Conjugate the following verbs in the present indicative passive.

1. impleo, impleēre, impleēvō, impleētus to fill

      Singular

Plural

1st

2nd


2. pelloÅ, pellere, pepulòÅ, pulsus to push

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1st</th>
<th>2nd</th>
<th>3rd</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>S</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. paroÅ, paraÅre, paraÅvôÅ, paraÅtus to prepare

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1st</th>
<th>2nd</th>
<th>3rd</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>S</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Identify the following forms according to person, number, and voice.

Then translate.

1. impleAmus
IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

To form this tense, -ba- is added to the present stem, followed by the active personal endings:

Sing. 1st amaAbam
teneAbam
dōAceAbam
capieAbam
audieAbam

2nd amaAbas
teneAbas
dōAceAbas
capieAbas
42

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

Plur. 1st amaÅbamus teneÅbamus dôÅceÅbamus capieÅbamus audieÅbamus 2nd amaÅbaÅtis
teneÅbaÅtis
dôÅceÅbaÅtis
capieÅbaÅtis
audieÅbaÅtis
3rd amaÅbant
teneÅbant
diceÅbant
capieÅbant
audieÅbant
diceÅbaÅs

you were saying, you used to say

Notes:
The 1st person singular uses the ending -m, which shortens preceding long vowels.
Third-conjugation verbs take long -eÅ- before the -baÅ-.
i-stem third- and all fourth-conjugation verbs show -ieÅ- before -baÅ.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE
To form this tense, -baÅ- is added to the present stem, followed by the passive personal endings:

Sing. 1st amaÅbar
teneÅbar
dôÅceÅbar
capieÅbar
Exercises

4. Conjugate the following verbs in the imperfect indicative active.

1. impleoÅ, impleÅre, impleÅvõÅ, impleÅtus

Singular

Plural

1st

_____________

_____________

2nd

_____________

_____________

3rd

_____________

_____________

CHAPTER 4 The Verb
2. pello, pellere, pepulō, pulsus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. venio, venēre, veAnō, ventus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Conjugate the following verbs in the imperfect indicative passive.

1. duōco, duōcere, duōxō, ductus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. habeo, habeâre, habuô, habitus

Singular
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Voice</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>1st</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Identify the following forms according to person, number, and voice.

Then translate.

1. pelleÅbaÅmur

2. habeÅbaÅmus

3. duÅceÅbam

4. pelleÅbaÅminõÅ

5. impleÅbantur

6. venieÅbant

7. habeÅbaÅtur

8. impleÅbat

**FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE**

This tense is formed differently for the different conjugations: For the 1rst and second conjugations -bi- is added to
the present stem.

For non-i-stem third-conjugation verbs, the vowel of the stem changes to -eÅ.

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

For i-stem third- and fourth-conjugation verbs, the vowel of the stem changes to -ieÅ.

Then the active personal endings are added:

Sing.

1st
amaÅboÅ
teneÅboÅ
dôÅcam
capiam
audiam

2nd
amaÅbis
teneÅbis
dôÅceÅs
capieÅs
audôÅeÅs

3rd
amaÅbit
teneÅbit
dôÅacet
capiet
audiet

Plur.

1st
amaÅbimus
teneÅbimus
dôÅceÅmus
Notes:
In the first and second conjugations, the first-person singular uses the ending -o.
The -i- of -bi- is absorbed into the -o.
In the third and fourth conjugations, the first-person singular uses -m. The vowel
-e- changes to -a (short before final -m).
In third-person plural the -i- of -bi- changes to -u- before -nt.

FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE
The same stem alterations are used with the passive personal endings: Sing. 1st
ama

tene

dō

capi

audie

tene

dō

capi

audie

tene

dō

capi

I will be loved
capieōminō

you (pl.) will be captured

Note: The i of -bi- changes to e before -ris and -re, and to u before -ntur.

Exercises

7. Conjugate the following verbs in the future indicative active.

1. paroÅ, paraÅre, paraÅvōÅ, paraÅtus

Singular

Plural

1st

____________

____________

2nd

____________

____________

3rd

____________

____________

2. duÅcoÅ, duÅcere, duÅxōÅ, ductus

Singular

Plural

1st

____________

____________

2nd

____________

____________

3rd

____________
8. Conjugate the following verbs in the future indicative passive.

1. impleoÅ, impleÅre, impleÅvôÅ, impleÅtus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. audioÅ, audõÅre, audõÅvôÅ, audõÅtus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9. Identify the following forms according to person, number, and voice.

Then translate.

1. paraÅbis
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1st</th>
<th>2nd</th>
<th>3rd</th>
<th>3rd i-stem</th>
<th>4th</th>
<th>3rd i-stem</th>
<th>4th</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>impleAbóA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>duAcèAmur</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>audieÁtur</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>pellam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>paraAbuntur</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>habeÀbitis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>pelleÀmus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>impleAbere</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>duAcèAminõA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE**

To form the present subjunctive, the present stem for each conjugation must change its vowel.

1st
2nd
3rd
3rd i-stem
4th
ameÁ-
teneaÁ-
dicaÁ-
capiaÁ-
audiaÁ-
Then the personal endings are added.

46

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

Sing.

1st
amem
teneam
dōÂcam
capiam
audiam

2nd
ameÂs
teneaÂs
dōÂcaÂs
capiaÂs
audiaÂs

3rd
amet
teneat
dicat
capiat
audiat

Plur.

1st
ameÂmus
teneaÂmus
dōÂcaÂmus
capiaÂmus
audiaÂmus

2nd
ameÅtis
teneaÅtis
dôÅcaÅtis
capiaÅtis
audiaÅtis
3rd
ament
teneant
dicant
capiant
audiant

Note: The 3rst-person singular uses the ending -m.

In the third and fourth conjugations, 3rst-person singular is identical to the same form of the future indicative.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

The same stem alterations are used with the passive personal endings: Sing.

1st
amer
tenear
dôÅcar
capiar
audiar

2nd
ameÅris
teneaÅris
dôÅcaÅris
capiaÅris
capiar
capiar
audiaÅtis
ameÅre
teneaÅre
dôÅcaÅre
The following is perhaps a helpful mnemonic device for remembering the vowel changes for the formation of the present subjunctive: 1st

2nd

3rd
Exercises

10. Conjugate the following verbs in the present subjunctive active: 1. paro, para, paravō, paratus

Singular
Plural
1st


2nd


3rd


2. facio, facere, fecō, factus

Singular
Plural
1st


2nd


3rd
11. Conjugate the following verbs in the present subjunctive passive.

1. habeo, habeō, habēō, habitus

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1st</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2nd</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3rd</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. duāco, duācre, duāxō, ductus

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1st</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2nd</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3rd</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE**
This tense is formed using the entire second principal part for its stem. The final -e is lengthened and the active personal endings applied: Sing. 1st

amaÅrem
teneÅrem
dõÅcерem
caperem
audõÅrem

2nd amaÅreÅs
teneÅreÅs
dõÅcereÅs
capereÅs
audõÅreÅs

3rd amaÅret
teneÅret
dõÅcерet
caperet
audõÅret

Plur.

1st
amaÅreÅmus
teneÅreÅmus
dõÅcereÅmus
capereÅmus
audõÅreÅmus

2nd amaÅreÅtis
teneÅreÅtis
dõÅcereÅtis
capereÅtis
audõÅreÅtis

3rd amaÅrent
teneÅrent
dõÅcерент
caperент
audõÅrent

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

This tense is formed like the active, with the passive personal endings: Sing. 1st
amaÅrer
teneÅrer
dõÅcerer
caperer
audõÅrer

2nd amaÅreÅris
teneÅreÅris
dõÅcereÅris
capereÅris
audõÅreÅris
amaÅreÅre
teneÅreÅre
dõÅcereÅre
capereÅre
audõÅreÅre

3rd amaÅreÅtur
teneÅreÅtur
dõÅcereÅtur
capereÅtur
audõÅreÅtur

Plur. 1st
amaÅreÅmur teneÅreÅmur dõÅcereÅmur capereÅmur audõÅreÅmur 2nd amaÅreÅminõÅ teneÅreÅminõÅ
dõÅcereÅminõÅ capereÅminõÅ audõÅreÅminõÅ

3rd amaÅrentur teneÅrentur dõÅcereÅrentur capereÅrentur audõÅrentur Note: Because the entire infinitive is used as the stem, there is no real distinction among conjugations in the imperfect subjunctive.

48

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

Exercises

12. Conjugate the verb facioÅ, facere, feAcõÅ, factus in the imperfect subjunctive active.

Singular

Plural
13. Conjugate the verb *duēco*, *duēcere*, *duēxō*, ductus in the imperfect subjunctive passive.

**Singular**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE**

The present imperative singular is formed by dropping the -re from the second principal part. The plural takes the ending -te:

Sing.

ama

tene

age
cape

audē

Plur.
amaÅte
teneÅte
agite
capite
audõÅte
cape!

Take
Note: Before the ending -te in the third and fourth conjugations, the stem vowel
-i- returns.

There are four verbs that form the imperative irregularly: Sing.

Plur.
dõÅc
say
dõÅcite
duÅc
lead
duÅcite
fac
do
facite
fer
carry
ferte

PRESENT IMPERATIVE PASSIVE

The passive imperative is identical to the second-person singular and plural of the present indicative:

Plur.
amåÅre
teneÅre
tagere
capere
CHAPTER 4 The Verb

Note: In the singular, only the -re ending is used (not -ris). The present imperative passive is identical in form to the present infinitive active. Context will enable you to tell the difference between them.

FUTURE IMPERATIVE ACTIVE

The future imperative has both second and third persons: Sing.

2nd
amaÅtoÅ
teneÅtoÅ
dôÅcitoÅ
capitoÅ
audôÅtoÅ

3rd
amaÅtoÅ
teneÅtoÅ
dôÅcitoÅ
capitoÅ
audôÅtoÅ

Plur.
2nd
amaÅtoÅte
teneÅtoÅ
dôÅcitoÅ
capitoÅ
Let them love!

The future imperative is somewhat rare, appearing mostly in legal or archaizing language.

The future passive imperative is so rare that it will not be covered in this book.

Exercises

If necessary, refer to the following list of verbs for the exercises: ambulo, ambulaère, ambulaère, ambulaátus

walk

claÁmo, claÁmaère, claÁmaévõ, claÁmaátus

shout

habeo, habeÁre, habuõ, habitus

have

impleo, impleÁre, impleÁvõ, impleÁtus

®ll

iubeo, iubeÁre, iussõ, iussus

command

deÁleo, deÁleÁre, deÁleÁvõ, deÁleÁtus

destroy

duÁco, duÁcere, duÁxõ, ductus

lead

g ero, gerere, gessõ, gestus

manage

pello, pellere, pepulõ, pulsus

push
14. Identify the following forms according to person, number, tense, voice and mood. Do not translate. (If there is more than one possibility, give all.)

1. ambulaÅmus

2. ambuleÅtis

3. ambulaÅbat

4. impleaÅtur

5. impleÅbunt

6. impleÅreÅs

50

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

7. pelleÅs

8. pellaÅtis

9. pellitis

10. duÅcam

11. duÅceÅris
12. venōÅreÅs
13. duÅceÅre
14. duÅcere
15. iaciaÅris
16. iacite
17. fac
18. doÅnaÅbor
19. deÅleÅbimur
20. deÅleÅbaÅmur
21. iubeÅboÅ
22. veniaÅmus
23. doÅnaÅminōÅ
24. pellaÅminōÅ
25. dōÅceÅbaÅs
26. habeÅbitis
15. Translate the following forms.

1. dōcit

2. iacieś

3. pellunt

4. faciam

5. deAleAbantur

6. dōAcimus

7. gerite
16. Change the following forms from active to passive, retaining person, number, tense, and mood.

1. dōcit
2. duēcamus
3. gereātis
4. duēcite
5. pelleābam
6. iubeāret
7. deAleābis
8. cape
9. iacimus
10. audiam

17. Change the following forms from passive to active, retaining person, number, tense, and mood.
1. iubeor
2. gereĀbaAmur
3. capiminōĀ
4. pelleĀtur
5. deAleĀreĀre
6. impleäberis

7. capere

8. dōñcuntur

9. habeäbaäminöä

10. iacereämur

18. If the form is singular, change to plural; if it is plural, change to singular.

1. deälent

2. capiminöä

3. faciam

4. gereäs

5. venieäbaäs

6. dōñcar

7. pellereämus

8. impleäbit

9. duäceätis

10. habeäberis
CHAPTER 4 The Verb

Perfect System

In the perfect system, verbs of all conjugations behave the same. However, the active and passive voices are formed from different stems. Therefore, these systems will be treated separately.

PERFECT ACTIVE SYSTEM

The perfect active stem is the third principal part minus the ending -õÅ: amaÅv-tenu-
dōÅx-
ceÅp-
audōÅv-

All tenses of the perfect active system are formed from this stem, with no difference among the different conjugations.

Perfect Indicative Active

This tense has its own set of endings. These are added to the perfect active stem: Sing.

1st
-õÅ

cēÅpõÅ

2nd
-istõÅ

cēÅpistõÅ

3rd
-it

cēÅpit

Plur.

1st
-imus

cēÅpimus

2nd
-istis

cēÅpistis
you captured, you have captured

Pluperfect Indicative Active
This tense is formed by adding -era- to the perfect active stem, followed by the active personal endings:

ceperam
I had loved
ceperas
you had loved
ceperat
he, she, it had loved
ceperamus
we had loved
ceperatis
you (pl.) had loved
ceperant
they had loved

Note: The 1st-person singular uses the ending -m.

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

53

Future Perfect Indicative Active
This tense is formed by adding -eri- to the perfect active stem, followed by the active personal endings:

cepero
I will have loved
ceperis
you will have loved
ceperit
he, she, it will have loved
we will have loved
you (pl.) will have loved
they will have loved

Note: The first-person singular uses the ending -o. (The i of -eri disappears before it.)

Perfect Subjunctive Active
This tense is formed by adding -eri- to the perfect active stem, followed by the active personal endings:

Subjunctives should not be translated in

Note: The first-person singular uses the ending -m.

Apart from the first-person singular, this tense is identical to the future perfect indicative. Grammatical conditions should enable you to tell them apart.

Pluperfect Subjunctive Active
This tense is formed by adding -isse- to the perfect active stem, followed by the active personal endings:

Subjunctives should not be translated in

Syncopation
Verbs whose third principal part ends in -võÅ may sometimes be shortened by eliminating -vi or -ve before endings. For example:

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

audõAstõÅ
instead of
audõAvistõÅ
audieArunt
audõAverunt
audõAsse
audõAvisse
amaArunt
amaAveArunt

This phenomenon is known as syncopation.

Exercises

19. Identify the following forms according to person, number, tense, voice, and mood. Do not translate. (If there is more than one possibility, give all.)

1. dõAxeroÅ
________________________________

2. amaAvisseAmus
________________________________

3. deAleAverit
________________________________

4. feÂcerim
________________________________

5. habuistõÅ
________________________________

6. duÂxeArunt
________________________________

7. duÂxerant
________________________________

8. duÂxerint
9. veÂnistis

10. tenuisset

20. Translate the following forms.

1. impleÂveraÂtis

2. feÂceroÂ

3. veÂnistõÂ

4. amaÂvõÂ

5. ieÂceritis

6. ieÂceraÂtis

7. ieÂcistis

8. pepuleÂrunt

9. dõÂxõÂ

10. dõÂximus

PERFECT PASSIVE SYSTEM

The stem for the perfect passive system is the fourth principal part. It works alongside different tenses of the verb "to be," Dsum, esse, fuõÂ, futuÂrusDto generate the tenses of this system. It is the form of sum that will determine tense and mood. (For the conjugation of this verb, see p. 67) Because the fourth principal part is a participle, that is, a verbal adjective, it must agree in gender, number, and case with its subject.

3 The word means a cutting or contraction.
CHAPTER 4 The Verb

55

Perfect Indicative Passive

This tense uses the present indicative of sum with the perfect passive participle: ductus, -a, -um sum

I was led, I have been led
ductus, -a, -um es

you were led, you have been led
ductus, -a, -um est

he, she, it was led=has been led
ductōÅ, -ae, -a sumus

we were led, we have been led
ductōÅ, -ae, -a estis

you (pl.) were led, you (pl.) have been led
led
ductōÅ, -ae, -a sunt

they were led, they have been led

Pluperfect Indicative Passive

This tense uses the imperfect indicative of sum with the perfect passive participle: ductus, -a, -um eram

I had been led
ductus, -a, -um eraÅs

you had been led
ductus, -a, -um erat

he, she, it had been led
ductōÅ, -ae, -a eraÅmus

we had been led
ductōÅ, -ae, -a eraÅtis

you (pl.) had been led
ductōÅ, -ae, -a erant

they had been led

Future Perfect Indicative Passive
This tense uses the future indicative of sum with the perfect passive participle: ductus, -a, -um ero
I will have been led
ductus, -a, -um eris
you will have been led
ductus, -a, -um erit
he, she, it will have been led
ductō, -ae, -a erimus
we will have been led
ductō, -ae, -a eritis
you (pl.) will have been led
ductō, -ae, -a erunt
they will have been led
Perfect Subjunctive Passive
This tense uses the present subjunctive of sum with the perfect passive participle: ductus, -a, -um sim
 ductus, -a, -um sōmus
 we will have been led
ductō, -ae, -a sōmus
 Subjunctives should not be translated in
 ductō, -ae, -a sōtmus
 Subjunctives should not be translated in
 ductō, -ae, -a sōtis
 isolation.
ductō, -ae, -a sint
Note: In the passive system the future perfect indicative and perfect subjunctive do not resemble each other.

56

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

Pluperfect Subjunctive Passive
This tense uses the imperfect subjunctive of sum with the perfect passive participle: ductus, -a, -um essem
ductus, -a, -um esseÁs
ductus, -a, -um esseÁt
 ductō, -ae, -a esseÁmus
 Subjunctives should not be translated in
Exercises

21. Identify the following forms according to person, number, tense, voice, and mood. Do not translate. (If there is more than one possibility, give all.)

1. impleÅtum est
   ______________________________
   ______________________________

2. impleÅta erat
   ______________________________
   ______________________________

3. impleÅta sunt
   ______________________________
   ______________________________

4. pulsus sum
   ______________________________
   ______________________________

5. iussõÅ sumus
   ______________________________
   ______________________________

6. audõÅta esseÅs
   ______________________________
   ______________________________

7. deÅleÅta erunt
   ______________________________
   ______________________________

8. deÅleÅta sint
   ______________________________
   ______________________________

9. audõÅtum esset ______________________________
57

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

22. Translate the following forms. Remember to acknowledge the gender of the subject.

1. impleÅtum est

2. impleÅta erat

3. iussôÅ sumus

4. deÅleÅta erunt

5. pulsae erant

6. iactum erit

7. captôÅ erant

8. capta est

23. Change the following forms from active to passive, retaining person, number, tense, and mood. Do not translate.

1. ceÅperis

2. ceÅperim
3. deAleAvistis

4. ieAceraAmus

5. pepulisset

6. impleAvit

7. impleAverit

8. impleAverat

9. impleAvisseAmus

10. duAxArunt

24. Change the following forms from passive to active, retaining person, number, tense, and mood. Do not translate.
1. ductoA esseAthis

2. capta erat

3. captae sumus

4. captus eroA

5. ductus sit

6. deAleAtum erit

7. deAleAtoA sunt
8. deAleAtae erant

9. deAleAta erunt

10. deAleAtus esset

25. Identify and translate the following forms.

1. amaAveArunt

2. ductoA erunt

3. ambulaAverit

4. iussistoA

5. iussus est

6. deAleAtum erat

7. deAleAveraAmus

8. impleAvistis

9. pepuleraAtis

10. ceAperitis

11. ambulaAbaAs

12. pellam
13. impleátis

58
CHAPTER 4 The Verb
14. pellent

15. pelleArs

16. pelleAre

17. duAciminòA

18. duAceAbaAminòA

19. duÀcentur

20. impleÀmur

21. impleÀbaÀtur

22. impleÀbunt

23. impleÀbuntur

24. deÀleÀboÀ

25. capieÀbaÀre

26. cape
26. Identify person, number, tense, and voice for the following subjunctive forms. Do not translate.
1. ceÅperim
2. capiaÅminõÅ
3. ceÅpisseÅtis
4. captõÅ esseÅtis
5. capereÅre
6. audõÅtum sit
7. audōÅrent

8. audiaÅmur

9. pepuleritis

10. audōÅvisset

11. habeÅreÅtur

12. teneaÅris

13. tentae sint

14. teneÅrentur

15. gerat

16. ambuleÅtis

17. amaÅreÅmur

18. amaÅvisseÅs

19. amaÅtus essem ________________________________

20. amaÅverim

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

59

Verbal Nouns
INFINITIVES

Infinitives are so called because they lack the finite characteristics of person and number. They do, however, show tense and voice.

Present Active Infinitive

This is the second principal part:

amaÅre  
to love

teneÅre  
to have

dõÅcere  
to say

capere  
to capture

audõÅre  
to hear

Present Passive Infinitive

For the first, second, and fourth conjugations, the present passive infinitive is formed from the active infinitive by changing the final -e to -õÅ: ama ÅrõÅ

to be loved

teneÅrõÅ  
to be had

audõÅrõÅ  
to be heard

For the third conjugation, the entire -ere ending is changed to -õÅ: dõÅcõÅ

to be said

capõÅ  
to be captured

Perfect Active Infinitive

The perfect active infinitive is formed by adding the ending -isse to the perfect active stem:

amaÅvisse  
to have loved
to have captured

Note: It is actually the perfect infinitive that is the stem of the pluperfect subjunctive active.

Perfect Passive Infinitive

The perfect passive infinitive is formed by adding the present infinitive of sum to the fourth principal part:

amaòtus, -a, -um esse
to have been loved
captus, -a, -um esse
to have been captured

Future Active Infinitive

The future active infinitive is formed by adding the present infinitive of sum to the future active participle:

amaòtuòrus, -a, -um esse
to be about to love
captuòrus, -a, -um esse
to be about to capture

Future Passive Infinitive

The future passive infinitive is formed by adding the supine to the passive infinitive of eoò:

amaòtum òòòò

captum òòòò

This form is used very rarely. It has been omitted from the exercises.

Exercise

27. Identify and translate the following forms.

1. habuisse

2. agòò

3. aòòtus, -a, -um esse
4. iacere
_______________________________
5. deÌleÌròA
_______________________________
6. deÌleÌtuÅrus, -a, -um esse
_______________________________
7. deÌleÌvisse
_______________________________

SUPINE

The supine is a verbal noun existing only in the accusative and ablative cases. It is formed as a fourth-declension noun from the fourth principal part: Acc.
captum
dictum
factum
Abl.
captuÅ
dictuÅ
factuÅ

GERUND

The gerund supplements the inceptive for complete declension of the verbal noun. It has no nominative case:
CHAPTER 4 The Verb
61
Gen.
amandòA
capiendòA
Dat.
amandoÅ
capiendoÅ
Acc.
amandum
capiendum
Abl.
amandoÅ

capiendoÅ

amandôÅ

of loving

Participles

Participles are verbal adjectives. As verbs they show tense: present, perfect, and future: and voice: active and passive. As adjectives they decline and can modify nouns or act as substantives.

PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

The present active participle is a third-declension adjective of one termination, formed from the present stem:
amãns, amantis

loving
teneãns, tenentis

having
dôãceãns, dicentis
telling
capieãns, capientis

capturing
audieãns, audientis

hearing

Here is the full declension:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masc.=fem.</td>
<td>Masc.=fem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuter</td>
<td>Neuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>Nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dôãceãns</td>
<td>dôãceãns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dôãceãns</td>
<td>dôAcenteãs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

The perfect passive participle is the fourth principal part; it declines like a first-second-declension adjective.

amaÅtus, -a, -um
(having been) loved
dictus, -a, -um
(having been) said
captus, -a, -um
(having been) captured

FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

The future active participle is formed by adding the ending -uÅrus, -a, -um to the stem of the fourth principal part. It declines like a first-second-declension adjective.

amaÅtuÅrus, -a, -um
about to love
dicturus, -a, -um
about to say
capturus, -a, -um
about to capture
FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

The future passive participle is formed by adding the ending -ndus, -a, -um to the present stem. It declines like a first-second-declension adjective. Its meaning contains an idea of obligation or necessity.
amandus, -a, -um
having to be loved
dóscendus, -a, -um
having to be said
capiendus, -a, -um
having to be captured

Exercise
28. Translate the following.
1. capieñs
__________________________
2. mōles capieñs
__________________________
3. mōles urbem capieñs
__________________________
4. mōles urbem capturus
__________________________
5. captus
__________________________
6. urbs capta
__________________________
7. urbs a mōlite capta
__________________________
PERIPHRASTICS

The future participle may be combined with the verb sum to form what are called periphrastics. They may appear in any tense.

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

Active Periphrastic

The active periphrastic is so called because it uses the future active participle: capturus sum

I am about to capture
capturus eram
I was about to capture

Passive Periphrastic

The passive periphrastic is so called because it uses the future passive participle: capiendus est

He must be captured
capienda erat
She had to be captured
capiendus erunt
They will have to be captured

Exercise

29. Translate:

1. urbs deAleenda est

________________________________

2. urbeAs deAleendae erant

________________________________

3. urbeAs deAleendae erunt

________________________________

4. virAs urbem deAleAtuArAs sunt
Deponent Verbs

Deponent verbs are a class of verbs in Latin that, for the most part, use passive forms but have active meanings. Their principal parts are passive and three in number, functioning just as the principal parts of ordinary verbs. That is, they provide the stems for the entire conjugation of the verb.

Here are some example deponent verbs:

1st
mō'rōr, mō'rōrō, mō'rōrōtus sum
admire

2nd
fateōr, fateōrō, fassus sum
confess

3rd
sequōr, sequō, secuētus sum
follow

3rd i-stem
patiōr, patōō, passus sum
suffer

4th
partiōr, partiōrō, partiōrōtus sum
share

The 1st principal part is the 1st-person singular, present indicative passive (but active in meaning):
patiōr
I suffer

4 They are called deponent because they have deposed'' or put aside their active forms.
to confess
sequŏÅ

to follow

Note: As in the case of nondeponent verbs, the second principal part shows what conjugation a verb belongs to. Likewise the first principal part will show which verbs in the third conjugation are i-stem and which are not. For example, sequor and patior are both third conjugation. The i in patior shows that it is i-stem.

The third principal part is the first-person singular, perfect indicative passive (but active in meaning):

passus sum
I have suffered, I suffered

fassus est
he confessed

secuÀtŏÅ eraÅmus
we had followed

Deponents show all the moods and tenses of nondeponent verbs and form them regularly in the passive system. However, they do have some peculiarities.

PARTICIPLES

Though existing in the passive system, deponents do have present and future active participles that are active in both form and meaning.

Present Active
mŏÀraÅns, mŏÀrantis
admiring

patieÅns, patientis
suffering

partieÅns, partientis
sharing

Future Active
mŏÀratuÅrus, -a, -um
about to admire

passuÅrus, -a, -um
about to suffer

secuÀtuÅrus, -a, -um
about to follow
Note: This means that deponents can form future active infinitives and active periphrastics.

secúturus, -a, -um esse
to be about to follow
secúturus est
he is about to follow

Perfect
Because their passive forms are active in meaning, practically speaking, deponents have a perfect active participle:
mõaratus, -a, -um
having admired
secútus, -a, -um
having followed
passus, -a, -um
having suffered

CHAPTER 4 The Verb
65

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The imperfect subjunctive, you will recall, is formed from the present active infinitive for both the active and passive.

Deponents have no present active infinitive, but they form the imperfect subjunctive as if one existed. For example, working backward from mõarárõ, a first-conjugation passive infinitive, the active would be mõararë. From sequõ, a third-conjugation passive infinitive, it would be sequere. Though these forms do not actually exist independently, they act as stems for the formation of the imperfect subjunctive.
mõaraër
sequerer
mõaraëris (-re)
sequereãris (-re)
mõaraëtur
sequereãtur
mõaraëmur
sequereãmur
mõaraëminõ
Exercises

If necessary, refer to the following list of deponents for the exercises: coñor, coñarañor, coñanatūrus sum
try, attempt
lañbor, lañbōr, lāpsus sum
slip, fall
verēor, verēarōr, verītus sum
fear
loquor, loquōr, locūtus sum
speak
uñtor, uñtōr, uñsus sum
use
morior, morōr, mortuus sum
die
potior, potōrōr, potōtus sum
gain possession of

30. Translate the following forms.

1. lapsae erant

2. loqueñmur

3. uñtere

4. uñtere

5. morituñrus sum

6. vereñabañminōr
7. vereAbiminodA
   
8. lapsi eritis
   
9. coAnaAberis
   
10. potiendum est
   
11. loquuntur
   
12. uAtitur
   
66

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

31. Identify the following forms.
1. coAneAtur
   
2. uAtereAminodA
   
3. lapsodA sint
   
4. loquaAmur
   
5. moriaAris
   
6. verita essem
   
7. uAtaAmur
   
8. uAteAmur
Semi-Deponent Verbs

A few verbs are deponent only in the perfect system. This is indicated by their principal parts, which are active for the present system but passive for the perfect: audeo, audeere, ausus sum
dare
soleo, soleere, solitus sum
be accustomed to
gaudeo, gaudeere, gavus sum
be happy
fodo, federe, fatus sum
trust

This means that in the present they use normal active forms and in the perfect they use passive forms, both with active meanings:
loquor audeo
I dare to speak
loquor ausus sum
I dared to speak

Impersonal Verbs

There are some verbs in Latin that occur only in the third-person singular and the infinitive, without subjects. For this reason they are called impersonal; that is, they do not take personal subjects. Their principal parts reflect this, being third-person and infinitive forms:
piget, pigere, piguit
to disgust
pudet, pudere, puduit
to cause shame
paenitet, paenitere, paenuit
to cause repentance
taedet, taedere, taeduit
to weary
licet, liceÅre, licuit  
to be permitted  

oportet, oporteÅre, oportuit  
to be proper  

interest, interesse  
to be of interest  
reÅfert, reÅferre  
to be of concern  

For the uses of these verbs see pp. 167±168.

CHAPTER 4 The Verb
67

Some Irregular Verbs

Following are the most common irregular verbs in Latin.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present indicative</th>
<th>Imperfect indicative</th>
<th>Future indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sing. 1st</td>
<td>sum</td>
<td>eram</td>
<td>eroÅ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing. 2nd</td>
<td>sim</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing. 3rd</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the uses of these verbs see pp. 167±168.
es
eraÅs
eris
sõÅs
3rd
est
erat
erit
sit
Plur.
1st
sumus
eraÅmus
erimus
sõÅmus
2nd
estis
eraÅtis
eritis
sõÅtis
3rd
sunt
erant
erunt
sint

Note: The fourth principal part is the future active participle. This verb does not (and could not) have a passive system.

Sum has no present or perfect participles. It is regular in the imperfect subjunctive and the entire perfect system.

The future infinitive of sum is futuÅrum esse. However, in addition to this form there is the alternate fore. This form is also often used as the stem for the imperfect subjunctive, particularly for the third-person singular form foret.

possum, posse, potuõÅ, . . .
be able
Present
Imperfect
Future
Present
indicative
indicative
indicative
subjunctive
Sing.
1st
possum
poteram
potero
possim
2nd
potes
potera
poteris
possô
3rd
potest
poterat
poterit
possit
Plur.
1st
possumus
potera
poterimus
possòÅmus

2nd
potestis
poteraÅtis
poteritis
possòÅtis

3rd
possunt
poterant
poterunt
possint

This verb is compounded from sum. Before forms of sum beginning with the letter s, it pre®xes pos-. Before forms beginning with the letter e, it pre®xes pot-.

It forms the perfect regularly from its own stem potu-.

eoÅ, ðÅre, iðÅ=ðÅvòÅ, itus
to go

Present
Imperfect
Future
Present
indicative
indicative
indicative
subjunctive
Sing.
1st
eoÅ
ðÅbam
ðÅboÅ
eam
2nd
CHAPTER 4 The Verb

Plur.

1st
öÂmus
öÂbaÂmus
öÂbimus
eâÂmus

2nd
öÂtis
öÂbaÂtis
öÂbitis
eâÂtis

3rd
eunt
öÂbant
öÂbunt
eant

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

ieÂns, euntis

The rest of its conjugation is regular.
voloâ, velle, voluôâ
wish, be willing
noâloâ, noâlle, noâluôâ
be unwilling
maâloâ, maâlle, maâluôâ
want more, prefer

PRESENT INDICATIVE

Sing.
1st
voloâ
noâloâ
maâloâ
2nd
vôâs
noân vôâs
maâvôâs
3rd
vult
noân vult
maâvult

Plur.
1st
volumus
noâlumus
maÂlumus
2nd
vultis
noân vultis
maÂvultis
3rd
IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

Sing.

1st
voleÅbam
noÅleÅbam
maÅleÅbam

2nd
voleÅbaÅs
noÅleÅbaÅs
maÅleÅbaÅs

3rd
voleÅbat
noÅleÅbat
maÅleÅbat

Plur.

1st
voleÅbaÅmus
noÅleÅbaÅmus
maÅleÅbaÅmus

2nd
voleÅbaÅtis
noÅleÅbaÅtis
maÅleÅbaÅtis

3rd
voleÅbant
noÅleÅbant
maÅleÅbant
FUTURE INDICATIVE

Sing.
1st
volam
noÅlam
maÅlam
2nd
voleÅs
noÅleÅs
maÅleÅs
3rd
volet
noÅlet
maÅlet
Plur.
1st
2nd
e tc. (as regular third conjugation)
3rd

CHAPTER 4 The Verb
69

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

Sing.
1st
velim
noÅlim
maÅlim
2nd
veloÅs
noAløÅs
maAløÅs
ma\-lō\-ās
3rd
velit
no\-lō\-it
ma\-lō\-it
Plur.
1st
velō\-āmus
no\-lō\-āmus
ma\-lō\-āmus
2nd
velō\-ātis
no\-lō\-ātis
ma\-lō\-ātis
3rd
velīn
no\-lō\-int
ma\-lō\-int
PRESENT PARTICIPLE
vole\-āns, volentis
no\-lō\-āns, no\-lō\-entis
ma\-lō\-ā has no present participle
These verbs are regular in the imperfect subjunctive and the perfect system.
ferō\-ā, ferre, tulō\-ā, latus
bear, carry
PRESENT INDICATIVE
Active
Passive
Sing.
1st
Otherwise, feroÅ acts as a regular third conjugation verb.

fõÅoÅ, ®erõÅ, factus sum

be done, be made, happen

This verb is used as the passive for the present system of the verb.

facioÅ, facere, feÅcõÅ, factus

70

CHAPTER 4 The Verb
It has active forms with passive meanings and conjugates as a regular i-stem third-conjugation verb. Note that it has a long -õÅ- in the stem: Present

Imperfect

Future

Present

indicative

indicative

indicative

subjunctive

Sing.

1st
fõÅoÅ
fõÅeÅbam
fõÅam
fõÅam

2nd
fõÅs
fõÅeÅbaÅs
fõÅeÅs
fõÅaÅs

3rd
®t
fõÅeÅbat
fõÅet
fõÅat

Plur.

1st
fõÅmus
fõÅeÅbaÅmus
fõÅeÅmus
fõÅaÅmus

fõÅaÅmus
As the principal parts indicate, this verb exists only in the perfect tense. However in the perfect it has present meaning.

-o Adistô, o âdisse
hate

Its pluperfect tense acts as a simple past and its future perfect as a simple future: o Âderam
I hated
-o Âderit
he will hate

Because this verb lacks a present system, it is called a defective verb.

Exercise

32. Translate the following forms:

1. erimus
   __________________

2. no Âlunt
   __________________

3. poteritis
   __________________

4. possunt
   __________________
CHAPTER 4 The Verb

20. maÅlunt

21. noÅluit

22. ferre

23. ieÅns

24. potestis

25. posse

This page intentionally left blank.

CHAPTER 5
Adverbs and Prepositions

Adverbs

Adverbs are words that modify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs. They answer questions such as How? Where? When?

He wept bitterly.

The adverb bitterly modifies the verb wept and tells us how he wept.

I am extremely fat.

The adverb extremely modifies the adjective fat and tells us how fat I am.

Adverbs are formed from adjectives in one of two different ways. First-second-declension adjectives form adverbs by adding the ending -eÅ to the stem: amõÅceÅ

in a friendly manner

misereÅ

wretchedly

Third-declension adjectives form adverbs by adding the ending -iter to the stem: fortiter
bravely
aÌcriter
sharply

Sometimes the neuter accusative singular of an adjective will serve as an adverb: multum
much
facile
easily

CHAPTER 5 Adverbs and Prepositions

The comparative degree of the adverb is supplied by the neuter accusative singular of the comparative adjective:
aÌcriter
sharply
aÌcrius
more sharply
misereÀ
wretchedly
misericus
more wretchedly

The superlative degree of the adverb is formed as the adverb of a regular Ìrst-second-declension adjective, with the
ending -eÀ
fortissimeÀ
most bravely
aÌcerrimeÀ
most sharply

Some common adverbs are irregular in all degrees:
bene
well
melius
better
optime
best
male
badly
peius
worse
pessime
worst
parum
too little
minus
less
minime
least
multum
much
pluAs
more
maxime
most greatly

Exercise

1. Generate the appropriate adverb in the positive, comparative, and superlative degrees for the following adjectives:

Positive

Comparative

Superlative

1. noAbilis

2. acerbus
Prepositions

Prepositions are words placed before nouns to create phrases that express adverbial meanings. They answer questions such as Where? Why? How? When?

The pig slept under the table.
The preposition under combines with the noun table to tell us where the pig slept.
Prepositions in Latin take the accusative or the ablative case. Some may take both.

CHAPTER 5 Adverbs and Prepositions

75

COMMON PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE CASE

ad

to, toward

They set out toward Asia

ad Asiam pro®ciscuntur

for,1 with a view to

ad pacem

for peace
ante
before (in space or time)
aparte
ante oppidum
before the town
ante bellum
before the war
apud
at, near
apud RheÅnum
at the Rhine
at the house of
ceÅnaÅbis bene apud meÅ
you will dine well at my house
circum
around
circum castra
around the camp
contraÅ
against
contraÅ illum dôAcoÅ
I speak against that man
inter
among
inter mortuoÅs
among the dead
between
inter meam opôÂnioÂnem
ac tuam
between my opinion and yours
ob
on account of, because of
ob metum
because of fear
per
through (in different senses)
multa per aequora
vectus
conveyed through many seas
nihil per õÅram actum est
nothing was done through
anger
post
behind
post montem
behind the mountain
after post mortem
after death
praeter
beyond
praeter õÅnsulaÅs
beyond the islands
praeter spem
beyond expectation
propter
on account of
propter amoÅrem
on account of love
trans
across trans ¬ uÅmen
across the river
"For" in the sense of purpose (i.e., I did it "for money", not in the sense of a gift "for you."

CHAPTER 5 Adverbs and Prepositions

COMMON PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ABLATIVE CASE

aÅ, ab2
away from
aÅ BritanniaÅ
away from Britain
by3 interfectus est aÅ Caesare
he was killed by Caesar
cum
with cum amõÅcõÅs
with friends
Personal, relative, and interrogative pronouns attach to the end of this word:
meÅcum
with me
quibuscum?
with whom?
deÅ
down from
deÅ montibus
down from the mountains
contending
deÅ animaÅ
contending the soul
eÅ, ex4
out of eÅ proÅvnciaÅ ire
to go out of the province
proÅ
for, on behalf of
pro amico meo
on behalf of my friend
sine
without
sine pugna et sine vulnere
without a fight and without
injury
PREPOSITIONS THAT TAKE BOTH ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE CASES
in
accinto
in Asiam abit
he will go into Asia
against
oRAATIO in CatilAnam
a speech against Catiline
ablin, on
in Asia est
he is in Asia
in tanta maestitia fuisse
to have been in such great sadness
2 Generally, the form ab is used before a word beginning with a vowel, and a before a word beginning with a consonant.
3 In the sense of an action performed by a person. This kind of prepositional phrase usually occurs with verbs in the passive voice and constitutes the ablative of personal agent. See p. 92.
4 Generally the form ex is used before a word beginning with a vowel, and e before a word beginning with a consonant.
CHAPTER 5 Adverbs and Prepositions
77
sub
accunder (implying motion)
sub portam venient
they will come beneath the gate
ablunder (stationary)
quidquid sub terra est
whatever is beneath the earth

Exercise

2. Translate the following phrases:

1. sub luña

__________

2. post bellum

__________

3. apud regem

__________

4. circum urbem

__________

5. per agros

__________

6. sine amore

__________

7. ex aqua

__________

8. cum avaritia

__________

9. de montibus

__________

10. contra molitiae

__________

11. ob pecuniam

__________

12. pro regâna

__________
CHAPTER 6
Syntax of the Noun
Nominative Case

SUBJECT
The nominative case is the case for the subject of a sentence: PoeÅta vincit.
The poet conquers.
PoeÅta is in the nominative case because it is the subject of this sentence.
Any adjective used to modify this subject must agree with it in gender and number, as well as case.
PoeÅta miser vincit.
The wretched poet conquers.
Miser is masculine nominative singular to agree with poeÅta.

PREDICATE NOMINATIVE
The nominative case is also used in the following manner: PoeÅta est miser.
The poet is wretched.
or
PoeÅta est servus.
The poet is a slave.
In these sentences poeÅta is still the subject. The function of the sentence is to make a statement about this subject, saying essentially `X Y,' with the verb acting as an equal sign.
PoeÅta
est
miser
X
5
CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

This Y is called a predicate, and it agrees in case with the subject. Therefore, in the sentences on page 79, miser and servus are called predicate nominatives.

Genitive Case

The genitive case has many meanings in common with the English preposition of.

For example:

poeĀta amoĀris.

a poet of love.

amor pecuĀniae.

love of money.

A noun in the genitive case usually follows another noun and gives information about it. Above, amoĀris tells us something about what kind of poet she is, pecuĀniae about what kind of love it is. In other words, the genitive case functions like an adjective.

POSSESSIVE GENITIVE

terra reĀgis

the land of the king

This genitive shows possession or ownership.

PARTITIVE GENITIVE

numerus viroĀrum

a number of men

lōĀbra aurōĀ

a pound of gold

The partitive genitive expresses the whole from which a part has come. This genitive is often found with superlatives:

Ille vir est optimus poeĀtarum

That man is the best of the poets

OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

amor pecuĀniae
love of money

nex animA lium
slaughter of animals

The objective genitive follows a noun that has a verbal idea in its meaning.
amor
amoA, amaAre
to love
nex
necoA, necaAre
to kill

The use of genitive then corresponds to the direct object of the verbal idea contained in that noun:
to love money

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

81
In the phrase amor pecuAniae, the genitive of money represents the direct object of the verbal idea of `love.' Therefore, it is called an objective genitive.

SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE

amor maAtris
the love of a mother
adventus naAvis
the arrival of the ship

Like the objective genitive, the subjective genitive follows a noun with a verbal idea in its meaning, e.g., `to love,' `to arrive.' This genitive corresponds to the subject of that verbal idea:
The mother loves.
The ship arrives.

Therefore, it is called a subjective genitive.

GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC, OR PREDICATE GENITIVE

Hominum est pecuAniam amaAre
It is characteristic of men to love money

This genitive is almost always used in sentences of this kind, often with an infinitive as the subject, saying that a certain type of action is characteristic of someone or something. Such a sentence has the form X Y, i.e., PecuAniam amaAre
The genitive functions as the predicate, and so this type of construction is also called a predicate genitive.

**GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION**

*vir magnae avaritiae*

*a man of great avarice*

This genitive together with an adjective makes a phrase that describes another noun.

**GENITIVE OF INDEFINITE VALUE**

*Illud consilium magnô aestimo.*

*I reckon that advice of great (value).*

As the name suggests, this genitive is used to make an unspecific judgment of value.

**GENITIVE WITH CERTAIN VERBS**

Certain verbs, such as some impersonal verbs (see p. 167) and those denoting remembering or forgetting, take the genitive case.

*Pecuniae taedet poeta.*

*The poet feels disgust of money.*

*Oblòvisca minò bello.*

*Let us be forgetful of wars.*

These should be learned as a matter of vocabulary with such verbs.

**Exercises**

1. Translate the following. Then identify the case and usage of the italicized word(s).

1. *Puer est fòlius nautae.*

________________________________________________________________________

2. *Avaritia est amor pecuniae.*

________________________________________________________________________

3. *Gaudium amòaco est magnum.*

________________________________________________________________________

5. gladius fōaliae

6. spōāritis deōā

7. dolor servōārum caecoārum

8. Fōālioārum est patreās amaāre.

9. animal cornuum magnoārum

10. cornua animaālium

11. Illam reāgōānam nihilōā aestimoā.

2. Translate the following sentences.

1. Ut igitur in seāminibus est causa arboārum et stirpium, sōāc huius luctuoāsissimōā bellōā tuā seāmen fuistōā.

2. Ut Helena Troāianōās sic iste huic puāblicaē bellōā causa, causa pestis atque exitōā fuit.
3. Et nonamen pacis dulce est et ipsa res saluta ris; sed inter pacem et servitium plu ritnum interest. Pax est tranquilla laboras, servitas postremum malorum omnium, non modo bello sed morte etiam repellendum.

4. Maximus vnonum numerus fuit, permagnum optimum pondus argentum...

Ho rum paucos diebus nihil erat.

5. Non minus est imperatoris consilio superare quam gladio.

6. Iucundioarem faciet laboratem servitis recordatio.

7. Non putat tua dona esse tantum.

Vocabulary

ut
just as
igitur (adv.)
therefore
semen, semen, n.
seed
arbor, -oris, m.
tree
stirps, stirpis, -ium, f.
plant
sōAc
so
luctuōsus, -a, -um
distressing, grievous
Helena, -ae, f.
Helen
Troāianus, -a, -um
Trojan
pestis, pestis, f.
destruction, pestilence
noāmen, noāminis, n.
name
84
CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun
pax, paācis, f.
peace
dulcis, -e
sweet
saluātāris, -e
bene®cial, healthful
servituās, -tuātis, f.
slavery
trānuquilus, -a, -um
peaceful, tranquil
lōābertaās, -taātis, f.
freedom
postreāmus, -a, -um
most extreme
no\text{\textendash}n modo
not only
sed etiam
but also
mors, mortis, f.
death
repello\text{\textendash}, repellere
repel
numerus, -\text{-}\text{\textendash}, m.
number, amount
vō\text{\textendash}num, -\text{-}\text{\textendash}, n.
wine
pondus, ponderis, n.
weight, quantity
argentum, -\text{-}\text{\textendash}, n.
silver
paucō\text{\textendash}, -ae, -a
few
impera\text{\textendash}tor, -o\text{\textendash}ris, m.
commander
cō\text{\textendash}nsilium, -\text{-}\text{\textendash}, n.
advice, planning
gladius, -\text{-}\text{\textendash}, m.
sword
iu\text{\textendash}cundus, -a, -um
pleasing
recorda\text{\textendash}tio\text{\textendash}, o\text{\textendash}nis, f.
recollection, memory
lō\text{\textendash}berta\text{\textendash}s, -ta\text{\textendash}tis, f.
liberty
servitus, -tuÅtis, f.
slavery

putoÅ, putaÅre
think

tantus, -a, -um
so great

Dative Case

The dative case can often be translated by the English prepositions to and for.

Aqua est bona puerðAs.
Water is good for children.

Almost always you will ®nd nouns that denote people in the dative case; these are the peoplè`to'' or˝for˝ whom the
information in the rest of the sentence is important.

INDIRECT OBJECT

The dative is used to express the indirect object of a sentence.

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

85

Librum poeÅtae dedõÅ.
I gave a book to the poet.

PecuÅniam tibi moÅnstraÅboÅ.
I will show the money to you.

DATIVE OF THE POSSESSOR

This dative is used in a complete sentence to say that something belongs `˝to someone.'

ReÅgõÅ sunt multa animaÅlia.
To the king there are many animals.

or

The king has many animals.

PREDICATE DATIVE

This is an old and interesting use of the dative that does not much resemble its other uses.

Illa terra erit magno uÅsuõÅ.
Some suggested translations have been:
That land will bèòf great use.'
à source of great use.'

`for the purpose of great use.'

The sentence has the form of an equation in which the dative acts as the predicate: Illa terra erit magnoÅ usuõÅ
X
5
Y
Ventus est magnae cuÅrae.
The wind is a great concern.

This usage is often accompanied by another, more ordinary dative of reference to specify for whom the sentence is true:
NautõÅs ventus est magnae cuÅrae.
To the sailors the wind is a (source of) great concern.

DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS

Many compound verbs, that is, verbs with prepositional pre®xes attached to them, call for a referential dative:
RoÅmaÅnõÅ servituÅtem populõÅs
imposueÅrunt.
The Romans imposed slavery on the peoples.

86

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

It is as if the pre®x is a preposition pointing to the dative.
MuÅrum urbõÅ circumposuit.
He put a wall around the city.

DATIVE WITH CERTAIN INTRANSITIVE VERBS

Certain intransitive verbs, that is, verbs that do not take direct objects, naturally take the dative case:
PoeÅtõÅs persuaÅdeÅmus abõÅre.
We persuade the poets to go away.
ReAgõÅ noAn creAdoÅ.
I do not trust the king.

This dative should be learned as a matter of vocabulary with the verbs that take it.

DATIVE OF AGENT

This dative is used mostly with the passive periphrastic (see p. 63) Urbs vincenda est mōĀlitibus.

The city must be conquered by the

soldiers.

(Literally, "For the soldiers it is necessary for the city to be conquered." )

Exercises

3. Translate the following. Then identify the italicized usages.

1. Mihi noĀn est gladius.

2. ReĀx pecuĀniam mōĀlitibus doĀnabat.

3. NaĀvis poeĀtis deĀlenda erat.

4. Urbs magnae luxuĀriae nautōĀs deĀlenda erat.

5. Illa aqua puerōĀs noceĀbit.

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

87
6. Undae magno perâculo naâvibus sunt.

7. Exercitum montibus postposuit.

4. Translate the following sentences.

1. Parant ea quae uÅsuÅ sunt oppidoÅ.

2. Ille RoÅmaÅnae praerat arcôÅ.

3. Quam attulistôÅ ratioÅnem populoÅ RoÅmaÅnoÅ?

4. AliôÅs coÅnsilium, aliôÅs animus, aliôÅs occaÅsioÅ deÅfuit; voluntaÅs neÅminôÅ.

5. Mortem servituÅtôÅ antepoÅnaÅmus.

Vocabulary
paroÅ, paraÅre, paraÅvôÅ, paraÅtus
prepare
uÅsus, -uÅs, m.
use, advantage
praesum
to be in charge of
arx, arcis, f.
citadel
afferoÅ
bring to
ratio, -onis, f.
reason, reckoning
cōnāsilium, -ō, n.
advice, planning
occaēsio, -onis, f.
opportunity
deāsum
to be lacking to (dative)
voluntaēs, -taētis, f.
will, intention
nēmō, nēminis
nobody
mors, mortis, f.
death
servituēs, -tuētis, f.
slavery
antepoāno
place before, prefer

88

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun
Accusative Case
DIRECT OBJECT
The accusative is used to express the direct object of a sentence.
Mōāliteēs urbem deālent.
The soldiers destroy the city.
Sometimes a verb that would not normally take a direct object, e.g., eoā, to go, can take one naturally connected to its meaning.
iter ōāre
to go a road
viam ceādere
to go a road
Such a usage is called an internal or cognate accusative.

SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE OF AN INFINITIVE

Infinitives take subjects in the accusative case, most commonly in what is called indirect statement, that is, speech reported from another source. The grammar of this construction is explained in Chapter 8.

DòAmcoÅ viroÅs in via ambulaÅre.
I say that the men are walking in the road.

ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT OF TIME OR SPACE

This is an adverbial usage, limiting the time or space occupied by an action.

QuòAnque annoÅs laboÅrareÅveram.
I had worked for five years.

Sex mòAlia passuum processereÅrunt.
They advanced six miles.

ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE

The neuter singular accusative of an adjective can function as an adverb.

Multum pecuÅniam amaÅtis.
You love money very much.

ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE TO WHICH

The accusative, with or without prepositions, is used to express motion toward or against something.

Ad mare veÅnimus.
We came to the sea.

in mòAliéÅs
against the soldiers

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

89

Prepositions are not used for the names of cities, towns, or islands, or the nouns domus and ruÅs.

RoAmam õÅboÅ.
I will go to Rome.

Domum veÅnimus.
We came home.
ACCUSATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS
Many other ideas are expressed by the accusative with different prepositions (see p. 75).

ACCUSATIVE OF EXCLAMATION
The accusative is used for exclamations:
O rem terribilem!
A terrible thing!

Exercises
5. Translate the following. Then identify the italicized usages.
1. Pecunia amicitiam delebit.
2. Toam noctem ambulavit.
3. Viam difficilem nocturnum dio.
4. Romam feminae processerunt.
5. Dico pecuniam amicitiam deleam.
6. Dicit viros clamam.
7. Avaëritia mentem reágis deAleAvit.

8. MultoÀs annoÀs avaÀritia mentem reÀgis deÀleÀbat.

90

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

6. Translate the following sentences.

1. Habet quidem certeÀs reÀs puÀblica adulescentoÀs noÀbillissimoÀs paraÀtoÀs deÀfensoÀreÀs.

2. Hanc veÀroÀ taeterrimam beÀluam quis ferre potest aut quoÀ modoÀ? Quid est in AntoÀnioÀ praeter liboÀdinem, cruÀdelaÀtem, petulantiam, audaÀciam?

3. PoÀne ante oculoÀs laetitiam senaÀtuÀs populoÀque RoÀmaÀnòÀ.

4. Bellum nefaÀrium contraÀ aÀraÀs et focoÀs, contraÀ vòÀtam fortuÀnostaÀs nostraÀs ab homine proÀÀoÀgaÀtoÀ ac perditoÀ noÀAn comparaÀroÀa sed geròÀ iam vòÀderam.
5. At quam multōs dieōs in eaō villaō turpissimē es perbacchātus!

6. O foeditātem hominis āgitiōsam, o impudentiam, neāquitiam, libōединem noān ferandam!

Vocabulary

quidem (adv.)
indeed
certeō (adv.)
certainly
adulescēns, -ntis
young, youthful
parō, paraōre
prepare
defensor, -oōris, m.
defender
ve𝐀roō
but

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun
91
taeter, -tra, -trum
foul
be𝐀lua, -ae, f.
beast
quoἈ modoἈ
how?
AntoÅnius, -ðÄ, m.
Antonius
libôÅdoÅ, -inis, f.
lust
cruÅdeÅlitaÅs, -taÅtis, f.
cruelty
petulantia, -ae, f.
arrogance
audaÅcia, -ae, f.
outrageous boldness, audacity
laetitia, -ae, f.
happiness
senaÅtus, -us, m.
senate
nefaÅrius, -a, -um
evil, unspeakably criminal
aÅra, -ae, f.
altar
focus, -ðÄ, m.
hearth, @replace
proÅ°ÅgaÅtus, -a, -um
pro°igate
perditus, -a, -um
ruined, desperate
comparoÅ, comparåre
prepare, get ready
at
but
villa, -ae, f.
villa
turpis, -e
foul
perbacchor (1st conjug.)
revel, have wild parties
foeditaÅs, -taÅtis, f.
repulsiveness, baseness
¯aÅgitioÅsus, -a, -um
disgraceful
impudentia, -ae, f.
shamelessness
neÅquitia, -ae, f.
worthlessness
Ablative Case
The ablative does many of the jobs of the English prepositions from, with, in, and by. They are many.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH (FROM)
Prepositions denoting ideas of separation take the ablative case: ex urbe
out of the city
deÅ montibus
down from the mountains
ab aquaÅ
away from the water
Names of cities, towns, and islands and the nouns domus and ruÅs do not take prepositions to express this meaning.

92
CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun
RoÅmaÅ veÅneÅrunt.
They came from Rome.
RuÅre veÅneÅrunt.
They came from the country.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE WHERE (IN)
This ablative takes the preposition in.
in Asia
in Asia
in terrō̄s
in the lands
Names of cities, towns, and islands and the nouns domus and rūs do not take the preposition in to express this meaning. They take the locative case (see p. 97).

ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN OR WITHIN WHICH (IN)
These ablatives situate an event in time.
illō diē
on that day
eō tempore
at that time
Quō̄Anque diēbus urbs capta est.
The city was captured within five days.

ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT (BY)
This ablative, without a preposition, expresses the means or instrument by which an action is performed.
Urbem gladiō̄s vincunt.
They conquer the city with swords.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE (FROM)
This ablative, without a preposition, expresses the cause of an action.
Dolōre clamat.
He shouts because of pain.

ABLATIVE OF PERSONAL AGENT (BY)
This ablative, with the preposition ā̄=āb, expresses the agent through whom an action in the passive voice has been performed.
Urbs ā̄ mō̄Alitibus vincta est.
The city was conquered by the soldiers.
Liber ā̄ poētā scrō̄bētur.
The book will be written by the poet.

Note: The soldiers and the poet are personal agents, that is, people. For nonpersonal agents, Latin uses the ablative of means: Urbs avaRitiā deAlēta est.
The city was destroyed by avarice.

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

93

ABLATIVE OF MANNER (WITH)

This ablative, with the preposition cum, expresses the manner in which an action is performed.

Cum gaudio canebat.

He was singing with joy.

However, if the ablative noun is modified by an adjective, the preposition cum becomes optional:

Magno gaudio

Cum magno gaudio canebat.

He sang with great joy.

Magno cum gaudio

ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION (FROM)

This ablative, like the ablative of place from which, expresses separation.

Te lôbera metu.

I will free you from fear.

Vacuo culpa non sunt mortuo.

The dead are not free from blame.

ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON (FROM)

This ablative is used with a comparative adjective (see p. 24) and without a preposition to express that to which something is being compared.

Amor durior est amòcitia.

Love is harder than friendship.

ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE (BY)

This ablative is used with a comparative adjective to express, as the name suggests, the degree of difference in the comparison.

Amor multo durior est amòcitia.

Love is harder than friendship by much.

Hic altior tribus pedibus est quam ille. This man is taller than that man by three feet.

ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION (WITH)

A noun and adjective in the ablative case can describe another noun.
vir grandibus pedibus
a man with large feet
feÅmina magnaÅ sapientiaÅ
a woman of great wisdom
This usage is similar to the genitive of description (see p. 81).

1 Sometimes an adjective will move in front of a one-syllable preposition like this to give the expression a more pleasing and symmetrical form.

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

ABLATIVE OF RESPECT

This ablative is used to specify or limit a statement.
IlloÅs virtuÅte praeceÅdimus.
We surpass those men in respect to excellence.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

An ablative noun and participle or two ablative nouns or adjectives may be used in combination to create what is essentially a subordinate clause.
MõÅlitibus clamantibus, reÅx ad urbem ambulat.
With the soldiers shouting, the king walks toward the city.
MultõÅs urbibus aÅ reÅge captõÅs,
With many cities having been captured bypopulus timeÅbat.
the king, the people were afraid.
ReÅge deÅmentõÅ, mõÅliteÅs timeÅbant.
With the king being crazy, the soldiers were afraid.

(For a fuller treatment of this construction, see pp. 145±146.) ABLATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS

Many other ideas are expressed by the accusative with different prepositions (see p. 75).

Exercises
7. Translate the following. Then identify the italicized usages.

1. Animal est grandius pueroÅ.

2. AnimaÅlia aÅ pueroÅ duÅcuntur.

3. FeÅminae magnaÅ cuÅraÅ ad mare veÅneÅrunt.

4. FeÅminae RoÅmaÅ veÅneÅrunt

5. AvaÅritiaÅ poeÅtam expulistis.

6. GladioÅ poeÅtam expulistõÅ.

7. PoeÅtõÅs canentibus, dõÅ noÅs audieÅbant.

8. IlloÅ annoÅ multa bella in terraÅ erant.

9. ReÅx multoÅ deÅmentior est reÅgôÅnaÅ.

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

10. AnimaÅlia magnõÅs cornibus timeoÅ.

11. TimoÅre ex urbe reÅgôÅna cucurrit.

8. Translate the following sentences:

1. Sunt enim optimoÅ animoÅ, summoÅ coÅnsilioÅ, singulaÅrõÅ concordiaÅ.

2. HôÅ omneÅs linguaÅ, instituÅtõÅs, leÅgibus inter seÅ differunt.
3. Sed AntoÄnius tenetur, premitur, urgeatur nunc eÄs coÄpiÄs quaÄs iam habeÄmus, mox eÄs quaÄs paucÄs dieÄbus novÄÄs coÄsuleÄs comparaÄbunt.

4. Quis enim hoÄc adulescente castior, quis modestior, quod in iuventuÄte habeÄmus illustrius exemplum veteris sanctitaÄtis?

5. Attulerat iam ille lÄberae cÄvitÄ partim metuÄ partim patientiaÄ consuetuÄdinem serviendÄ. Cum illoÄ egoÄ teÄ dominandÄ cupÄditaÄte conferre possum, ceÄterÄs veÄroÄ reÄbus nulloÄ modoÄ comparandus es.

6. His auctoÄribus et ducibus, dÄÄs iuventibus, noÄbÄs vigilantibus et multum in posternuÄ proÄvidentibus, populoÄ RoÄmaÄnoÄ consentiente, erimus profectoÄ lÄberÄÄ brevÄÄ tempore. IuÄcundioÄrem autem faciet lÄbertaÄtem servituÄtis recordaÄtioÄ.
CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

Vocabulary

enim

for indeed

animus, -ūs, m.

mind, spirit

summus, -a, -um

the highest, best

cōnsilium, -ūs, n.

advice, planning

singulaēris, -e

remarkable, outstanding

concordia, -ae, f.

agreement

lingua, -ae, f.

tongue, language

institūtum, -ūs, n.

custom, usage

lex, leēgis, f.

law

differō

differ

urgeoū, urgeāre

press upon

cōāpiae, -ārum, f.

troops
mox (adv.)
soon
consul, -is, m.
consul
comparoÅ, comparaÅre
prepare, make ready
verbum, -ôÅ, n.
word
appelloÅ, appellaÅre
call
castus, -a, -um
chaste
modestus, -a, -um
modest
iuventuÅs, -tuÅtis, f.
youth
illustris, -e
shining, illustrious
vetus, veteris
old, ancient
sanctitaÅs, -taÅtis, f.
moral purity, sanctity
côÄvitaÅs, -taÅtis, f.
citzenry, state
partim (adv.)
partly
patientia, -ae, f.
patience, suffering
consuetuÄdoÅ, -tuÄdinis, f.
habit
servioÅ, servôÅre
to be a slave
cupôÄitaÅs, -taÅtis, f.
greed
dominor, dominaÅrôÅ, dominaÅtus sum
rule absolutely, dominate
conferoÅ
compare
auctor, -oÅris, m.
creator, producer
dux, ducis, m.
leader
iuvoÅ, iuvaÅre
help, assist
vigiloÅ, vigilaÅre
keep watch
in posterum
for the future
CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun
97
proÅvideoÅ, proÅvideÅre
provide
consentioÅ, consentôÅre
be in agreement
profectoÅ (adv.)
without question
brevis, -e
brief, short
iuÅcundus, -a, -um
pleasing
autem
moreover
recorda�tio, -o�nis, f.
recollection, memory
l�b�erta�s, -ta�tis, f.
liberty
servitu�s, -tu�tis, f.
slavery

Locative Case
The locative case expresses location. It is an older case that, for the most part, has died out in the language but survives in the names of cities, towns, islands, and the nouns domus and ru�s.
Except for these instances, location is usually expressed by the ablative case without the preposition in.

CHAPTER 7
Syntax of the
Adjective
The function of an adjective is to modify a noun. To do so, it must agree with the noun in gender, number, and case.
Generally, adjectives follow the nouns that they modify.
Poe�t�a deAm�ns magno� gaudi� luAnam
The insane poet sees the cold moon with
fr�gidam videt.
great joy.

Note that the adjective magno� precedes its noun gaudi�. This is commonly the case with adjectives denoting quantity rather than quality. For example, Latin will use multa pecuAnia rather than pecuAnia multa.
This is also the case with demonstrative and interrogative adjectives: quis vir?
what man?
ille vir
that man

Predicate Adjective
Sometimes an adjective is used in an equation or assertion. It must still agree with its noun.
Ventus est magnus.
The wind is great.

If a group of nouns is mixed masculine and feminine, the adjective will take the masculine.

Virōā et feĀminae sunt miserōā.

The men and women are wretched.

---

CHAPTER 7 Syntax of the Adjective

Substantive Adjective

Sometimes an adjective does not modify a noun but stands alone as if it were itself a noun. This is called the substantive use of the adjective.1

Bonus ad mare ambulat.

The good man walks to the water.

It is translated on the basis of its gender and number, here masculine singularD hence the good man.

Bonae ad mare ambulant.

The good women walk to the water.

bonus, malus, et deĀformis

the good (man), the bad (man), and the ugly (man)

Adverbial Use of the Adjective

Sometimes an adjective, rather than saying something general about a noun, will say something about that noun that is true only for the sentence in which it occurs. It seems to function more as an adverb.

Ille vir, cum hoc audōāvit, sapieĀns

That man, when he heard this, wisely
dissessit.

departed.

Often such a usage will occur in the nominative case, modifying the subject, and often it will occur near the verb, i.e., in an adverbial position. Notice the difference: SapieĀns, cum hoc audōāvit, dissessit.

The wise man, when he heard this,
departed.
Comparative and Superlative Adjectives

The comparative or superlative degree of the adjective may be used alone as a strengthened form of the positive.

Pater est sapientior.

The father is very wise.

Pater est sapientissimus.

The father is extremely wise.

Comparative adjectives often occur with an ablative of comparison nearby (see p. 93).

Pater est sapientior fōlius.

The father is wiser than the son.

Comparative adjectives may also express a comparison using the adverb quam.

Pater est sapientior quam fōlius.

The father is wiser than the son (is).

1 `Substantive' is another term for noun.

CHAPTER 7 Syntax of the Adjective

When quam is used, both terms in the comparison must be in the same case: fōlius on page 100 is nominative to correspond with pater.

Dōco patrem sapientior esse

I say that the father is wiser than the

quam fōlius.

son.

Here fōlius is accusative, to correspond to patrem, itself the subject of an indirect statement.

Superlative adjectives often take a partitive genitive.

Pecuñia est pessima omnium malorum.

Money is the worst of all evil things.

Sometimes the superlative will occur with quam to express the adjective's meaning `as strongly as possible.'

Pater est quam sapientissimus.

The father is as wise as possible.

Exercises

1. Translate the following.

1. Malō pecuñiam amant.
2. Multa pecunia est multo melior amore.

3. Multa pecunia est multo melior quam multus amor.

4. Aurum pulcherrimum omnium bonorum est.

5. Docuo aquam esse quam pulcherrimam.

6. Poeta miser de avaritia Romano rum clamabat.

7. Poeta de avaritia Romano rum miser clamabat.

2. Translate the following.
1. Luce sunt clariora no bos tua consilia omnia.

102

CHAPTER 7 Syntax of the Adjective

2. Hanc veoro taeterrimam bealue quam ferre potest?
3. Habet quidem certe reás puáblica aduleÁscentõAs noÁbilissimoÁs paraÁtoÁs deÁfensoÁreÁs.

4. Quis clausióribus viróAs quoÁdam tempore iuÁcundior, quis turpioÁribus coniunctior? Quis cõÁvis melióArumA partium aliquandoÁ, quis taetrior hostis huic cõÁvitaÁtõÁ? Quis in voluptaÁtibus inquinaÁtior, quis in laboÁribus patientior? Quis in rapaÁcitaÁte avaÁrior, quis in largóÁtoÁne effuÁsior?

Vocabulary
lux, luÁcis, f.
light
claÁrus, -a, -um
clear, bright
coaÁnsilium, -oÁ, n.
advice, planning
taetier, -tra, -trum
horrible, foul
beÁlua, -ae, f.
beast
quidem (adv.)
indeed
adulesceÁns, -nts
young, youthful
paroÅ, paraÅre
prepare
defensor, -oÅris, m.
defender
iuÅcundus, -a, -um
pleasing
turpis, -e
foul
coniunctus, -a, um
conjoined
aliquandoÅ (adv.)
ever, at any time
hostis, -is, -ium, m.
enemy
côÂvitaÅs, -taÂtis, f.
citizenry, state
voluptaÅs, -taÂtis, f.
pleasure
inquinaÅtus, -a, -um
dirty, stained
CHAPTER 7 Syntax of the Adjective
103
labor, -oÅris, m.
labor, work
rapaÅcitaÅs, -taÂtis, f.
rapacity
avaÅrus, -a, -um
greedy
largôÂtioÅ, -oÅnis, f.
effuÅsus, -a, -um
unrestrained

This page intentionally left blank.
CHAPTER 8
Syntax of the
A simple sentence is an independent clause; that is, unlike a subordinate clause, it can stand alone as a complete unit of meaning. This is what makes a sentence.

Most simple sentences have a subject and a verb:

Vir ambulat.
The man walks.

In Latin the subject may be implied in the verb by its ending: AmbulaMos.

We walk.

Sometimes the verb “to be” may be left out of a sentence: Ille vir sapiens.

That man is wise.

Because Latin is an in-ècted language, it does not rely upon word order to determine the grammatical meaning of its phrases and sentences. This does not mean that its word order is random.

Latin has a normal, neutral order that tends to place the subject of a sentence first and the verb last. Usually direct objects and adverbs gravitate toward the verb, with other information such as datives and prepositional phrases falling in the middle of the sentence.

Consider the following sequence:

Delet.
He destroys.

Mõlitës delet.
The soldiers destroy.

Mõlitës urbem deëlebunt.
The soldiers will destroy the city.

Mõlitës gladiës urbem deëleabant.
The soldiers were destroying the city with swords.

Mõlitës cum nautës gladiës urbem pro rege deëleverant.
The soldiers with the sailors had destroyed the city with swords on behalf of the king.
CHAPTER 8 Syntax of the Simple Sentence

Remember that adjectives and genitives tend to follow the nouns they modify: MōĀliteĀs reĀgnōĀ audaĀceĀs gladiōĀs magnōĀs

The bold soldiers of the kingdom urbem miserrimam proĀ reĀge caecoĀ

destroyed the most wretched city with deĀleĀveĀrunt.

great swords on behalf of the blind king.

Exercise
1. Translate the following.

1. Nauta videt.

_______________________________________________________


_______________________________________________________

3. Nauta oculōĀs montem võĀdit.

_______________________________________________________

4. Nauta bellum in montibus oculōĀs võĀderat.

_______________________________________________________

5. MultōĀs cum lacrimōĀs nauta miser bellum pessimum in montibus regnōĀ videĀbat.

_______________________________________________________

_______________________________________________________

6. MoĀns videĀtur.

_______________________________________________________

7. MoĀns aĀ nautaĀ videĀtur.

_______________________________________________________

8. Bellum aĀ nautaĀ in montibus visum est.
Indicative Mood

The indicative is the mood of fact. It presents information simply as true. (Tenses of the indicative should be translated according to the paradigms given in Chapter 2.) Exercises

2. Translate the following sentences, paying particular attention to the tense of the verb.

1. Rex coaveas terreter.

________________________________

2. Rex coaveas terreabit.

________________________________

CHAPTER 8 Syntax of the Simple Sentence

107

3. Rex coaveas terruit.

________________________________

4. Rex coaveas terruerit.

________________________________

5. Rex coaveas terruerat.

________________________________

6. Rex coaveas terrebat.

________________________________

3. Translate the following.

1. Argumentos ageamus, signoae lucce omnino clarioibus criminum refellemus; reas cum rea, causa cum causa, ratio cum ratione pugnabit.

________________________________

________________________________

________________________________

________________________________

2. Horum duo criminum video auctorem, video fontem, video certum nominem et caput.

________________________________

________________________________

Vocabulary

arguämentum, -ôä, n.
argument

agoä, agere, eAgôä, aÄctus
act, proceed

signum, -ôä, n.
sign, proof

lux, luâcis, f.
light

claärus, -ä, -um
clear, bright

crôÄmen, crôÄminis, n.
criminal charge

reÄs reôä, f.
(here) fact

causa, -ae, f.
case

108

CHAPTER 8 Syntax of the Simple Sentence

refelloä, refellere
refute, disprove
ratio, -onis, f. reasoning, reckoning
auctor, -oArs, m. source, creator
foAns, -ntis, -ium, m. fountain, source
caput, capitis, n. head
veArum but
genus, generis, n. type, kind
virtuAs, -tuAtis, f. excellence
moAs, moAris, -ium, m. custom
vix (adv.) scarcely
liber, librôA, m. book
reperioA, reperôAre discover
charta, -ae, f. page
quoque even, also
pristinus, -a, -um ancient, pristine
seveAritaAs, -tAtis, f. severity, seriousness
contineō, contineāre
contain

obsolescoō, obsolescere
fall into disuse, become forgotten

Exercise

4. Translate the following passage.

Inter terram caelumque [in] eoādem spōsitūā pendent certās discreāta spatiōās septem sōādēra quae ab incessuā vocāmus errantia. Eoārum medius sōāl fertur, amplissimaā

magnitūdine ac potestāte nec temporum modo terrārumque, sed sōāderum etiam ipsoārum caelōāque rector. Hunc esse mundōā totius animum ac mentem, hunc principāle natūrāe regimen ac nūmen creādere decet opera eius aestimanteās. Hic luācem reābus ministrat aŭtēque tenebrās, hic reliqua sōādera occultat, illustrat; hic viceās temporum annumque semper renascentem ex usuā natūrāe temperat; hic caelōā tristītiam discutit atque etiam humaānōā nūbila animōā sereānt; hic suum luāmen ceāterōās quoque sōāderibus faenerat, praeclārus, eximius, omnia intueāns, omnia etiam exaudieāns...
Vocabulary

terra, -ae, f.
earth, land
caelum, -ōÅ, n.
heaven
spōĀritus, -uĀs, m.
breath, air
pendeoĀ, pendeĀre
hang
certus, -a, -um
certain
discreĀtus, -a, -um
separate
spatiam, -ōÅ, n.
space, interval
septem
seven
sōĀdus, sōĀderis, n.
star
incessus, -uĀs, m.
walking, movement
vocoĀ, vocaĀre
call
erroĀ, erraĀre
wander (here errantia planets)
medius, -a, -um
in the middle, central
soĀl, soAlis, m.
sun
fertur
(here) moves
amplus, -a, -um
large
magnitudo, -inis, f.
size, magnitude
potestas, -taitis, f.
power
tempus, temporis, n.
time, season
rector, -oaris, m.
helmsman, ruler
mundus, -o, m.
world
principalis, -e
original, principal

CHAPTER 8 Syntax of the Simple Sentence
regimen, -inis, n.
rule
nuem, -inis, n.
spirit
credo, credere
believe
decet
it is fitting (acc. and inf.)
opus, operis, n.
work
aestimo, aestimaere
judge, reckon, estimate
lux, luem, f.
light
ministro, ministra
serve, provide
aufero
remove
tenebrae, -a, f. pl.
darkness, shadows
reliquus, -a, -um
remaining
occulto, occultare
hide, conceal
illustro, illustrare
illuminate
vicis, vicis, f.
turning, succession
annus, -ō, m.
year
renascor, renascō, renatus sum
be reborn
tempero, temperare
restrain, regulate
tristitia, -ae, f.
gloom, sadness
discutio, discutere
strike away, scatter
nuābila, -oārum, n. pl.
clouds
sereāno, sereānae
make calm, pacify
luōmen, -inis, n.
As stated earlier, the imperative is the mood for giving commands. It should be translated according to the paradigms given in Chapter 2.

**Imperative Mood**

For negative commands, Latin does not simply negate the imperative, but it uses a combination of noAlōA for the singular or noAlōAte for the plural with the present inceptive.

- **NoAlōA ambulaÅre!**
  - Do not walk! (sing.)

- **NoAlōAte loquōÅ!**
  - Do not speak! (pl.)

- **NoAlōA videArōÅ!**
  - Do not be seen! (sing.)

Latin also expresses negative commands using either the present or perfect subjunctive with the negative neÅ:

- **NeÅ ambuleÅs!**
  - Do not walk! (sing.)

- **NeÅ ambulaÅveris**
Do not walk! (sing.)
NeÅ inter®ciaÅtis!
Do not kill! (pl.)
NeÅ interfeÅceritis
Do not kill! (pl.)
Exercises
5. Translate the following.
1. NoÅlòÅte clamaÅre!

_______________________________________________________

2. NeÅ librum scrôÅbaÅs!

_______________________________________________________

3. NeÅ fòÅlium pepuleris!

_______________________________________________________

4. NoÅlòÅte pellòÅ!

_______________________________________________________

5. NeÅ urbem deÅleÅveritis, o mòÅliteÅs!

_______________________________________________________

6. NoÅlòÅte urbem deÅleÅre, o mòÅliteÅs!

_______________________________________________________

7. Urbem deÅleÅte, o mòÅliteÅs!

_______________________________________________________

8. Urbem deÅleÅ, o militeÅs!

_______________________________________________________

6. Translate the following.
1. AudòÅte, audòÅte, patreÅs conscriptòÅ, et cognoÅscite reòÅ puAblicae vulnera.

_______________________________________________________

_______________________________________________________

2. ConservaÅte igitur reòÅ puAblicae, iuÅdiceÅs, còÅvem bonaÅrum artium, bonaÅrum partium, bonoÅrum viroÅrum.

_______________________________________________________

_______________________________________________________
CHAPTER 8 Syntax of the Simple Sentence

3. Ne me hodie, cum isto ut pro vocavit respondro, oblatum esse puteatis meo.

4. Quam ob rem discende atque nunc mihi timorem eripe: si est verus, ne opprimar, sano falsus, ut tandem aliquando timeare desinam.

Vocabulary

patres conscriptores
senators

cognoscors, cognoscere
learn

vulnus, vulneris, n.
wound

conservus, conservare
save, preserve

igitur (adv.)
therefore

iuex, iudicis, m.
judge

citis, citoris, -ium, m.
citizen

ars, artis, -ium, f.
skill, art

pars, partis, -ium, f.
part
hodieÅ (adv.)
today
proÅvocoÅ, proÅvocaÅre
provoke
respondeoÅ, respondeÅre
respond
oblõÅviscor, oblõÅviscõÅ, oblõÅtus sum
forget
putoÅ, putaÅre
think
quam ob rem
for which reason
disceÅdo, disceÅdere
leave, depart
timor, -oÅris, m.
fear
eÅripioÅ, eÅripere
tear away, remove
veÅrus, -a, -um
true, real
opprimoÅ, opprimere
oppress
sõÅn
but if
falsus, -a, -um
false, unreal
tandem (adv.)
®nally, at least
aliquandoÅ
at some time, ever
timeo, timeare
fear
deasino, deasinere
cease (inf.)

CHAPTER 8 Syntax of the Simple Sentence
113

Subjunctive Mood: Independent Uses

Chapter 2 stated that the subjunctive should not be translated in isolation, but that its translation often involved such English words as `could,' `would,' and `might.'

The subjunctive mood does most of its work in subordinate clauses, usually governed by conjunctions or a grammatical context that determines its meaning.

(These will be treated in the next chapter.) However, the subjunctive can also be used as the main verb of an independent clause. Following are its main independent uses.

POTENTIAL

The subjunctive may express potentiality or possibility. The present tense is used for present potentiality, and the imperfect for past potentiality: Moleas urbem dealeant.

The soldiers could destroy the city.
Moleas urbem dealearent.
The soldiers could have destroyed the city.

DELIBERATIVE

This form of the subjunctive is used, often in the first person, to ask questions not of fact but of deliberation:

Urbem dealeamus?
Should we destroy the city?
Quid1 urbem dealeareamus?
Why should we have destroyed the city?

Again the present subjunctive is used for deliberation in present time, and the imperfect subjunctive for past deliberation.

OPTATIVE

The optative subjunctive expresses a wish. Often the word utinam, `if only,' accompanies this usage.2
The present subjunctive expresses a wish in the present time: Utinam mōĀliteÅs urbem deĀleant!

If only the soldiers would destroy the

city!

The imperfect subjunctive also expresses a wish in the present time, but one that cannot come true:

Utinam mōĀliteÅs urbem deĀleÅrent!

If only the soldiers were destroying the
city! (We know that they are not.)

1 Quid here is an adverbial accusative, a common usage best translated as `why?'

2 Less often, ut may be used.

114

CHAPTER 8 Syntax of the Simple Sentence

The pluperfect subjunctive expresses a wish in the past that could not have come true:

Utinam mōĀliteÅs urbem deĀleÅvissent!

If only the soldiers had destroyed the
city! (We know that they did not.)

To negate an optative subjunctive, Latin uses neÅ rather than noÅn: Utinam neÅ canant!

If only they were not singing!

HORTATORY OR JUSSIVE

The subjunctive can be used to express commands, mostly in the 1rst and third persons.3 (For second-person commands, usually the imperative is used.) Generally the present subjunctive is used:

Urbem deĀleaÅmus!

Let us destroy the city!

MōĀliteÅs urbem deĀleant!

Let the soldiers destroy the city!

To negate these, Latin uses neÅ.

NeÅ loquaÅtur!

Let him not speak.

Exercises

7. Translate the following. Then identify the italicized usages.

1. Utinam nautae nostrōÅ võĀcissent!
2. Ut nautae vincant!


4. Ad mare ambulem?

5. Ad mare ambulaÅreÅmus?

3 Customarily the ®rst-person usage is called hortatory and the third-person jussive.

CHAPTER 8 Syntax of the Simple Sentence

6. Ad mare ambuleÅmus!

7. Utinam ad mare ambulaÅvisseÅmus!

8. MõÅliteÅs ad mare noån ambulaÅrent?
8. Translate the following.

1. Ad decus et ad lōAberaÅtem naÅtōA sumus: aut haec teñeaÅmus aut cum dōÅgnitaÅte moriaÅmur.

2. Quis enim noÅn timeat omnia proÅvidentem et coÅgitantem et animad-vertentem et omnia ad seÅ pertineÅre putantem curioÅsum et pleÅnum negoÅtiōÅ deum?

3. O stultitiam! Stultitiamne dōÅcam an impudentiam singulaÅrem?

4. DeÅtur aliquōÅ luÅdus aetaÅtōÅ sit adulescentia lōÅberior; noÅn omnia voluptaÅ-
   tibus deÅnegenetur; noÅn semper superet veÅra illa et deÅrecta ratioÅ; vincat aliquandoÅ cupiditaÅs voluptaÅsque ratioÅnem.

5. Utinam tam facile veÅra invenōÅre possim quam falsa convincere!
6. Utinam cum Caesar societatem aut numquam coisset aut numquam diremissest!

7. Quid enim me interposerem audaciae tuae?

Vocabulary

decus, decoris, n.
honor
lōbertas, -taetis, f.
freedom
aut...aut
either...or
nascor, nascō, natus sum
be born
dōgnitas, -taetis, f.
dignity, prestige
enim
for indeed
providō, providere
foresee, provide
cōgito, cogitare
think, ponder
animadvertero, animadvertere
notice
pertineo, perteere
extend to, relate to
putoÅ, putaÅre
think
curioÅsus, -a, -um
careful, attentive
pleÅnus, -a, -um
full
negoÅtium, -ôÅ, n.
business, concern
stultitia, -ae, f.
stupidity
impudentia, -ae, f.
shamelessness
singulaÅris, -e
singular, remarkable
luÅdus, -ôÅ, m.
sport, gaming
aetaÅs, -taÅtis, f.
age, time of life
adulescentia, -ae, f.
youth
lôÅber, lôÅbera, lôÅberum
free
voluptaÅs, -taÅtis, f.
pleasure
deÅnegoÅ, deÅnegaÅre
deny, refuse
superoÅ, superaÅre
overcome
veÅrns, -a, -um
true, real
derectus, -a, -um
upright, straight
ratio, -onis, f.
reason, reckoning
vinco, vincere
conquer
aliquando (adv.)
sometimes
cupiditas, -taetis, f.
desire
CHAPTER 8 Syntax of the Simple Sentence
117
falsus, -a, -um
false
convincuo, convincere
defeat, refute
societas, -taetis, f.
alliance
numquam (adv.)
ever
coeo, coère
enter
dirimo, dirimere, diremptus
rip apart, destroy
interpono, interponere
place as an obstacle, interpose

Participles
Participles are defined as verbal adjectives. That is, they combine features of adjectives and verbs.
As adjectives, they modify nouns and must agree with the nouns they modify in gender, number, and case. They may also be used as substantives.
poeasa caneas
the singing poet

urbs capta

the captured city

captus

the captured man

As verbs they show tense—present, perfect, or future—and voice—active or passive.

They may also govern direct objects and take many constructions of finite verbs.

Poeâta luânam videâns canit.

The poet seeing the moon sings.

Here luânam is the direct object of the participle videâns, which itself modifies the subject poeâta.

Often, as in the above example, the participle separates itself from the noun it modifies in order to enclose anything it governs—such as, in this case, the direct object luânam.

Mõâles urbem a reâge captam deâleâtuârus

The soldier about to destroy the city

claâmat.

captured by the king shouts.

Note how a reâge is enclosed by urbem captam, which is itself enclosed by mõâleâs deâleâtuârus.

Because participles do so much work in Latin, it is often useful to translate them more fully as relative clauses in English:

The soldier who is about to destroy the city which was captured by the king is shouting.

It is important to realize, however, that the tense of a participle is not an independent time value as it is for forms of the indicative, but is only relative to the tense of the main verb in its clause.

The time value of a present participle is simultaneous with that of the main verb:

Poeâta caneâns luânam videâbat.

The poet who was singing saw the

moon.

Now the time value of the present participle must be simultaneous with that of the main verb, which is in the past,
videbat, and so it is translated `who was singing.'

The time value of the perfect participle is prior to that of the main verb: Mōules urbem a reāge captam deālet.

The soldier destroys the city which was captured by the king.

The perfect participle captam tells us that the capture took place prior to the action of the main verb deālet.

If the main verb is itself in the past tense, the perfect participle will express a time prior to that time:

Mōules urbem a reāge captam deāleāvit.

The soldier destroyed the city which had been conquered by the king.

If the main verb is in the future, the perfect participle will again express a time prior to that:

Mōules urbem a reāge captam deāleābit.

The soldier will destroy the city which has been captured by the king.

The time value of the future active participle is subsequent to that of the main verb:

Mōules urbem deāleātus claāmat.

The soldier who is going to destroy the city is shouting.

The destruction denoted by deāleātus will take place after the present time signified by claāmat.

Mōules urbem deāleātus claāmaāvit.

The soldier who was about to destroy the city shouted.

Exercise

9. Translate the following.

1. poeāta caneāns

2. lōābertaās deāleāta

3. lōābertaās avaāritiaā deāleāta

4. lōābertaās avaāritiaā mōālitum deāleāta
5. poëta clama tuurus

6. poëta in monte clama tuurus

7. poëta in monte de lòberta clama tuurus

8. poëta in monte de lòberta avaritia mòlitum de ale tuurus.

9. poëta in monte de lòberta avaritia mòlitum de ale tuurus mortuus est.

10. puer ad mare ambula servo capto timet.

11. puer ad mare ambula servo a nauto capto timebat.

12. puer ad mare ambula servo anima inter ciente videt.

13. puer ad mare ambula servo anima a servo interfecta vòdit.
Relative Clauses

Relative clauses, like participle phrases, are both adjectival and govern grammatical constructions themselves. They are adjectival in that they modify an antecedent to which they are attached by a relative pronoun. The relative pronoun must agree with its antecedent in gender and number. It takes its case from the grammatical function it fulfills within its own clause.

ReAx quem poeAta timet pecuÅniam amat. The king whom the poet fears loves money.

Most often a relative clause begins with a relative pronoun and ends with a verb: quem poeAta timet

The relative pronoun quem is masculine accusative singular. Its antecedent reÅx is masculine nominative singular. The pronoun quem is masculine and singular to 120

CHAPTER 8 Syntax of the Simple Sentence

agree with reÅx, and accusative because it is the direct object of the verb timet within its own clause.

ReAx cui gladium dedistõÅ aÅ poeÅtaÅ

The king to whom you gave a sword is feared by the poet.

In agreement with its antecedent reÅx, cui is masculine singular. It is dative because it is the indirect object of its own clause.

If it can be easily understood in context, the antecedent of a relative pronoun may be left out:

QuõÅ pecuÅniam amant sunt miserõÅ.

Those who love money are wretched.

The antecedent of quõÅ is understood to be the subject of the main verb sunt.

Exercise

10. Translate the following. Explain the case of the relative pronoun.

1. ReÅgõÅna quam reÅx timet aÅ poeÅtaÅ amaÅtur.

_______________________________________________________

_______________________________________________________

_______________________________________________________

2. ReÅx a quoÅ reÅgõÅna timeÅtur poeÅtaÅ oÅdit.

_______________________________________________________

_______________________________________________________

_______________________________________________________

3. ReÅx quem reÅgõÅna oÅdit animaÅlia magnoÅrum cornuum timet.
4. Anima consisting of those which were led to the city by the king, the poets greatly feared them.

5. Animals whose horns were large were killed when the guards found them.

6. The bodies of those animals whose horns were sold were burned.

CHAPTER 9
Syntax of the Complex Sentence

A complex sentence is one that contains one or more subordinate clauses that are said to depend on the main or independent clause. This means that they cannot stand alone as sentences, but must exist in conjunction with an independent clause.

When he got home, he destroyed the television.

Because he destroyed the television, his sister was angry.

``When he got home'' and ``because he destroyed the television'' are subordinate clauses. They cannot stand alone as sentences. A subordinate clause gives more information about the main clause by relating it to other circumstances.

We say that words such as `when'' and `because'' are subordinating conjunctions. They serve to introduce subordinate clauses and usually tell you what clauses mean.

``When'' introduces a temporal clause. ``When he got home'' is a temporal clause. It situates the action of the main clause in time, telling us when he destroyed the television.

``Because'' introduces a causal clause. ``Because he destroyed the television'' is a causal clause, telling us why his sister was angry.

Latin has many different kinds of subordinate clauses. They are categorized according to the different kinds of information they offer about the main clause.
Although there are many such categories, it may be convenient to simply think of their differences as differences in the vocabulary of subordinating conjunctions.

Some subordinating conjunctions take the indicative, and some take the subjunctive. Some can take either, with differences in meaning. Those that take the indicative will take whatever tense their sense requires. Those that take the subjunctive, however, are bound by two important grammatical considerations.

Sequence of Tenses

Subordinate uses of the subjunctive follow the `sequence of tenses.' This means that the tense of the subjunctive used in a subordinate clause will depend on the tense of the verb in the main clause.

There are four tenses of the subjunctive:

- Present
- Imperfect
- Perfect
- Pluperfect

If the main verb refers to the present or future, the subjunctive in a subordinate clause that follows it must be either present or perfect. This is said to be in primary sequence. If the main verb refers to the past, the subjunctive in a subordinate clause that follows it must be either imperfect or pluperfect. This is said to be in secondary sequence.

In each sequence, then, there are two possible tenses of the subjunctive that may be used. The difference between the two in each case will be one of relative time.

Relative Time

The concept of relative time first appeared in the discussion of participles (p. 117).

There it was said that the tense of the participle is not an objective time value, but one that can be understood only in relation to the time of the main verb. The same is true of subjunctives in subordinate clauses.

In primary sequence, the present subjunctive expresses a time simultaneous with (or sometimes subsequent to) that of the main verb: Scio quid facias.

I know what you are doing.

The present subjunctive tells us that whatever you are doing is happening at the same time as my knowing.

The perfect subjunctive expresses a time prior to that of the main verb: Scio quid feceris.

I know what you did.

The perfect subjunctive tells us that what you did happened before the time of my knowing, as if to say `I now know what you did then.'
1 The perfect indicative is unusual in that it has potentially two different time values, one past ("did") and one present ("have done"). Because this is so, it may lead to primary or secondary sequence in a given context.

However, this should be something to consider at more advanced stages of study.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

In secondary sequence, the imperfect subjunctive expresses a time simultaneous with (sometimes subsequent to) that of the main verb: ScieÅbam quid facereÅs.

I knew what you were doing.

The pluperfect subjunctive expresses a time prior to that of the main verb: ScieÅbam quid feÅcisseÅs.

I knew what you had done.

As stated above, though there are many different categories of subordinate clauses, for the most part it is possible to handle them correctly by knowing what their subordinating conjunctions mean and remembering the rules of sequence for uses of the subjunctive.

Temporal Clauses

Temporal clauses situate the action of the main clause in time by relating it to something else. There are many different subordinating conjunctions that introduce them.

Some temporal conjunctions take the indicative:

- postquam
  - after
- cum
  - when
- ut
  - when
- ubi
  - when

Cum mõÅliteÅs urbem võÅceÅrunt,
When the soldiers conquered the town,
servõÅ fuÅgeÅrunt.
the slaves ¯ed.

Some can take the indicative or subjunctive:

- antequam
  - before
They take the indicative to represent facts:

PoeÀae fuÀeÀrunt antequam mõÀliteÀs

The poets ¯ed before the soldiers
urbem ceÀpeÀrunt.
captured the city.
The Latin tells us that the capture of the city actually took place.
MõÀliteÀs pugnaÀbant doÀAnec poeÀae
The soldiers fought until the poets ¯ed.
fuÀeÀrunt.

124
CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence
These conjunctions take the subjunctive to represent something foreseen or anticipated:

PoÀetae fuÀeÀrunt antequam mõÀliteÀs
The poets ¯ed before the soldiers could
urbem caperent.
capture the city.
The Latin tells us that the capture of the city is something anticipated by the poets. It does not tell us whether or not it actually took place.
The imperfect subjunctive is used here because the main verb fuÀeÀrunt refers to the past, creating secondary sequence. In primary sequence, the present subjunctive would be used:

PoeÀae fugient antequam mõÀliteÀs
The poets will ¯ee before the soldiers
urbem capiant.
can capture the city.

Causal Clauses

A causal clause gives the cause for the main clause.

Some conjunctions take the indicative:

quando
because
quoniam
because

Quoniam mōAliteĀs urbem ceĀpeĀrunt,
Because the soldiers captured the city,
poeātae fuĀgeĀrunt.
the poets ¯ed.

Some take the subjunctive:

cum
because

Cum mōAliteĀs urbem ceĀpissent,
Because the soldiers had captured the
city, the poets ¯ed.

The pluperfect subjunctive ceĀpissent is used in secondary sequence and shows time prior to the main verb.
The imperfect subjunctive would show time simultaneous: Cum mōAliteĀs urbem caperent,
Because the soldiers were capturing the
city, the poets ¯ed.

In primary sequence the present subjunctive shows time simultaneous: Cum mōAliteĀs urbem capiant,
Because the soldiers are capturing the
city, the poets are ¯eeing.

The perfect subjunctive shows time prior:
Cum mōAliteĀs urbem ceĀperint,
Because the soldiers have captured the
city, the poets are fleeing.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

125

Some conjunctions can take the indicative or the subjunctive: quod because quia because They take the indicative to assert a cause as fact.

Quod möliteĀs urbem ceĀpeĀrunt,

Because the soldiers (actually) captured the city, the poets fled.

They take the subjunctive to express a cause given by someone other than the writer of the sentence:
The poets fled (supposedly) because the soldiers had captured the city.

Concessive Clauses

Concessive clauses begin with the word `although.' They concede that, although something is true, the main clause remains unaffected and is still true. Often the main clause will contain the word tamen, `nevertheless.'

Some conjunctions take the indicative:

etsōĀ although quamquam although

Some take the subjunctive:

cum although quamvōĀs
although

Cum móAliteÁs urbem ceÁpisent,
Although the soldiers had captured the
poeÁtae tamen noÁn fugéArunt.
city, the poets nevertheless did not
—ee.

The pluperfect subjunctive is used in secondary sequence, showing time prior to that of the main verb fugéArunt.

Exercises
1. Translate the following. Pay close attention to the mood of the verb in the subordinate clauses.
1. Quia servôÁ miserrimôÁ erant, reÁx populoÁ aurum dabat.
______________________________________________________
______________________________________________________

2. ReÁx populoÁ aurum dabat quod servôÁ miserrimôÁ essent.
______________________________________________________
______________________________________________________

126
CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence
3. EtsôÁ servôÁ miserrimôÁ sunt, aurum populoÁ reÁx noÁn doÁnaÁbit.
______________________________________________________
______________________________________________________

4. Cum reÁx populoÁ aurum dedisset, servôÁ noÁn claÁmaÁbant.
______________________________________________________
______________________________________________________

5. Cum reÁx populoÁ aurum dedit, claÁmaÁveÁrunt.
______________________________________________________
______________________________________________________

6. Quoniam reÁgôÁna capta erat, reÁx bellum paraÁbat.
______________________________________________________
______________________________________________________

7. ReÁx bellum paraÁbat priusquam reÁgôÁna interÁcereÁtur.
8. Bellum gerebant do nec re x interfectus est.

9. Bellum gerebant dum re x redaret.

10. Cum re x interfectus esset, reango na clama bat.

11. Cum re x interfectus esset, reango na tamen fe lix erat.

12. Ut luna discessit, luna die ano venit.

2. Translate the following sentences.

1. Tum de nique intercie re, cum iam ne amo tam improbus, tam perditus, tam tu o similis inven o poterit.

2. Neque ideo minus efface sunt oratio nes nostrae quia ad aureas iudicantium cum voluptate perveniunt.

3. Nam interitus quidem tu o quis bonus no an esset auctor, cum in ea salus et vo ata optim o cuiusque, lerta populus o romano dagnitasque consis teret?

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence
4. Sed antequam aggrediar ad ea quae a te disputata sunt, de te ipso dòcam quid sentiam.

5. Cum de antòaquòs loquaèris, uàtere antòqua lòAbertaëte, aå quaà vel magis deàgeneràvimus quam ab eÀloquentiaÀ.

6. Ipse Pompeius, ab inimòAcòAs Caesaris incitaÀtus et quod neÀminem dòAgnitaÀte secum exaequaÀròÀ voleÀbat, toÀtum seÀ ab eÀius amòAcitiaÀ aÀverterat.

7. VeÀrum tamen homineÀs, quamvòÀs in turbidòÀs reÀbus sint, sòÀ modo homineÀs sunt, interdum animòÀs relaxantur.

Vocabulary

tum (adv.)

then

deÀnique (adv.)
@nally, at last
intercio, intercere
kill
neÅmoÅ, neÅminis
nobody
improbus, -a, -um
base, depraved
perditus, -a, -um
ruined, desperate
similis, -e
similar (gen.)
ideoÅ
for this reason
ef®cax, -aÅcis
effective
oÅraÅtioÅ, -oÅnis, f.
speech
auris, auris, -ium, f.
ear
iuÅdicoÅ, iuÅdicaÅre
to judge
voluptaÅs, -taÅtis, f.
pleasure
128
CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence
pervenioÅ, pervenôÅre
arrive, come to
interitus, -uÅs, m.
death, destruction
auctor, -oÅris, m.
creator, producer
quidem
indeed
saluÅs, -uÅtis, f.
health, safety
lõÂbertaÅs, -taÅtis, f.
freedom
dôÂgnitaÅs, -taÅtis, f.
dignity, prestige
consistoÅ, consistere
rest upon
aggredior, aggredôÅ, aggressus sum
approach
disputoÅ, disputaÅre
argue, dispute
antiquus, -a, -um
ancient, old
loquor, loquôÅ, locuÅtus sum
speak
uÅtor, uÅtôÅ, uÅsus sum (abl.)
make use of
deÂgeneroÅ, deÂgeneraÅre
degenerate
eÅloquentia, -ae, f.
eloquence
Pompeius, -ôÅ, m.
Pompeius
incitaÅtus, -a, -um
roused, incited
inimôÂcus, -a, -um
enemy
Caesar, -aris, m.
Caesar
exaequo, exaequae
make level or equal
amicitia, -ae, f.
friendship
avertero, avertere
turn away
verum
but
turbidus, -a, -um
violently disturbed
modo (adv.)
at least, only
interdum (adv.)
sometimes
animus, -ō, m.
mind, spirit
relaxo, relaxae
relax

Purpose Clauses
Purpose clauses express the purpose or reason for an action. Like causal clauses, they answer the question "why?"
They are introduced by the conjunction ut or, if negated, by the conjunction ne, and they take the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence.
Mōlite urbem vincent ut rex capiat. The soldiers will conquer the city in order that the king may be captured.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence
129
Mōlite urbe vōce Arunt ne rex fugeret.
The soldiers conquered the city in order
that the king might not "ee.

Indirect Commands

Indirect commands follow verbs of commanding, requesting, begging, etc. They express the content of the command or request and answer the question "what," i.e.,

`what did he command?"

They are introduced by the conjunction ut and negated with neÅ, and take the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence.

ReÅx imperat ut mônîliteÅs urbem vincant. The king orders that the soldiers conquer the city.

ReÅx oÅraÅbat neÅ mônîliteÅs urbem vincerent. The king was begging that the soldiers not conquer the city.

Result Clauses

Result clauses express the result of an action or state. They are introduced by ut and take the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence: Tam miser est ut claÅmet.

He is so wretched that he shouts.

Ita claÅmaÅvit ut pueri timeÅrent.

He shouted in such a way that the children were afraid.

Usually the main clause before a result clause contains an intensifying word such as ita or tam that triggers the result.

Unlike purpose clauses and indirect commands, which also use the conjunction ut, result clauses do not use neÅ but are negated using noÅn inside the clause: Tam dulciter poeÅta caneÅbat ut

The poet sang so sweetly that we were

loquôÅ noÅn posseÅmus.

not able to speak.

A result clause may also be the subject or object of certain verbs: ReÅx effeÅcit ut lôAbertaÅs deÅleÅreÅtur.

The king brought it about that liberty was destroyed.

In this sentence the clause ut lôAbertaÅs deÅleÅreÅtur is actually the direct object of the verb effeÅcit.

Accidit ut reÅx deÅmentissimus sit.

It happens that the king is extremely insane.

In this sentence the clause ut reÅx deÅmentissimus sit is the subject of the verb accidit. In such cases the clause is called a substantive result clause, because the clause acts as a noun within its sentence.
Fear Clauses

Fear clauses express fears. They use the conjunctions ut and neÅ but with reverse meanings from the clauses above. Ut expresses negative fears, and neÅ expresses positive fears.

TimeÅbaÅmus neÅ reÅx lôÅberAtem deÅleÅreÅt. We were afraid that the king would destroy liberty.

TimeÅmus ut môñliteÅs veniant.

We are afraid that the soldiers are not coming.

Sometimes a fear clause may begin with neÅ and then be negated with noÅn: TimeÅmus neÅ môñliteÅs noÅn veniant.

We are afraid that the soldiers are not coming.

Clauses of Prevention

Certain verbs with meanings of prevention or hindrance take clauses of prevention.

They are introduced by the conjunction neÅ or quoÅminus and take the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence:

ReÅx môñliteÅs impedôÅvit quoÅminus

The king prevented the soldiers from urbem caperent.

capturing the city.

If the main clause is negated, the prevention clause may be introduced by quôÅn: ReÅx noÅn impediet quôÅn môñliteÅs

The king will not prevent the soldiers urbem capiant.

from capturing the city.

Clauses of Doubting

Doubt is expressed in two ways in Latin. If the expression of doubt is not negated, it will take the form of an indirect question (see p. 153). If the expression of doubt is negated, it takes a clause of doubting introduced by the conjunction quôÅn: NoÅn dubitoÅ quôÅn môñliteÅs urbem

I do not doubt that the soldiers captured ceÅperint.

city.

In this example the perfect subjunctive expresses time prior to that of the main verb in primary sequence.
Clauses of Proviso

Clauses of proviso give a condition for the main clause. They take the subjunctive and are introduced by the following conjunctions:

- dum
  provided that
- modo
  provided that
- dummodo
  provided that

ReAx populoÅ aurum doÅnabit dummodoÅ The king will give money to the people mõÅliteÅs urbem capiant.
provided that the soldiers capture the city.

Exercises

3. Translate the following. Then identify the type of subordinate clause in each sentence.

1. Populus timet neÅ avaÅritia reÅgis regnum deÅleat.

______________________________________________________
______________________________________________________

2. PoeÅta timeÅbat neÅ avaÅritia regnum deÅleÅvisset.

______________________________________________________
______________________________________________________

3. ReÅx poeÅtaÅs deÅterret quoÅminus libroÅs scrõÅbant.

______________________________________________________
______________________________________________________

4. ReÅx mõÅliteÅs noÅn deÅterreÅbit quõÅn poeÅtaÅs inter®ciant.

______________________________________________________
______________________________________________________

5. RoÅmaÅnõÅ noÅn dubitaÅbant quõÅn imperium esset maximum bonoÅrum.

______________________________________________________
______________________________________________________
6. Poeta reagebam oaraabant ne libros dealearentur.

7. Reax libros non dealebit modo moaliteas poetae interciant.


132

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

10. Tam magna erat avaritia regis ut populus nunc sit populus servoarum.

4. Translate the following sentences.

1. Erat tam amans is ut omnôs suas fortuás alieánôs servôs commit-teret?

2. Vincat aliquando cupiditas voluptaœque ratioœm, dum modo illa praescriptioœ moderatioœque teneat.

4. Sed cum mihi, patreÅs conscriptôÅ, et proÅ meÅ a liquid et in AntoÅnium multa dôÅcenda sint, alterum petoÅ a voÅbôÅ, ut meÅ proÅ meÅ dôÅcentem benigneÅ, alterum ipse ef®ciam, ut contraÅ illum cum dôÅcam attenteÅ audiaÅtis.

5. Tu istôÅs faucibus, istôÅs lateribus, ista gladiaÅtoÅriaÅ toÅtôÅus corporis 

6. CuÅr aut tam familiaÅris fuistôÅ ut aurum commodaÅreÅs aut tam inimôÅca ut veneÅnum timeÅreÅs?

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence
133

7. An timeÅbant neÅ tot uÅnum, valenteÅs imbecillum, alaÅcreÅs perterritum superaÅre noÅn possent?

8. Nec dubitaÅrôÅ deÅbet quôÅn fuerint ante HomeÅrum poeÅtæ.
9. Quam ob rem disce de atque hunc mihi timorem eripe; si est verus, ne opprimar, sōn falsus, ut tandem aliquando time re deamin.

Vocabulary

deamans, -ntis
insane
fortuna, -ae, f.
fortune, wealth
alienus, -a, -um
belonging to another person
committo, committere
entrust
vinco, vincere
conquer
aliquando
sometimes
cupiditas, -ta tis, f.
desire
voluptas, -ta tis, f.
pleasure
ratio, -o nis, f.
reasoning, rational thought
ille, illa, illud
(here) the following
praescriptio, -o nis, f.
precept, rule
moderatio, -onis, f.
mildness, control
invidia, -ae, f.
ill will
lúbero, lúbere
free
sententia, -ae, f.
thought, opinion
philosophus, -ō, m.
philosopher
patres conscriptō
senators
Antoniō, -ō, m.
Antonius
alter, -tra, -trum
one (of two)
benigne (adv.)
benevolently, in a friendly manner
efcio, efcre
bring about, effect
attentō (adv.)
attentively
faucēs, -ium, f. pl.
throat
134
CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence
latus, lateris, n.
side, -ank
gladiōrius, -a, -um
of a gladiator
armata, -atis, f.
strength
vōnum, -ō, n.
wine
Hippia, -ae, f.
Hippia (a woman's name)
nuptiae, -aērum, f. pl.
wedding
exhaurio, exhaurōre
drain, drink up
conspectus, -uōs, m.
sight, view
vomo, vomere
vomit
postrōdie (adv.)
on the following day
cuī
why
aut . . . aut
either . . . or
familiaēris, -e
friendly, intimate
commodo, commodaēre
lend
inimōcus, -a, -um
enemy, hostile
venēnum, -ō, n.
poison
tot (indeclinable)
so many (here, so many men)
valēAns, -ntis
strong, powerful
imbeĀcillus, -a, -um
weak
alacer, -cris, -cre
swift
perterritus, -a, -um
thoroughly terri®ed
superoĀ, superaĀre
overcome
deĀbeoĀ, deĀbeĀre
owe, ought (inf.)
quam ob rem
for which reason2
disceĀdo, disceĀdere
leave, depart
timor, -oĀris, m.
fear
veĀrus, -a, -um
true, real
opprimoĀ, opprimere
oppress
sōĀn
but if
falsus, -a, -um
false, unreal
eĀripioĀ, eĀripere
tear away, remove
tandem (adv.)
Conditional Sentences

Conditional sentences are composed of two clauses:

If he works, he is happy

‘If he works,’ the subordinate clause, gives the condition for which the main clause will be true.

Latin grammars traditionally refer to the ‘if’ clause of a conditional sentence as the protasis and the main clause as the apodosis.

There are generally three kinds of conditional sentence: Simple conditions

Future conditions

Contrary-to-fact conditions

These categories differ according to the tense and mood of the verb they employ in the protasis and the apodosis.

The subordinating conjunction ‘if’ in Latin is sōÂ. Its negative is nisōÂ. The main clause is negated normally, with noÂn.

SIMPLE CONDITIONS

Simple conditions take a present or past tense of the indicative in both the protasis and apodosis. They should be translated accordingly.

SōÂ laboÂrat, miser est.

If he works, he is wretched.

NisōÂ laboÂrat, feÂlix erat.

If he was not working, he was happy.

FUTURE CONDITIONS

There are three kinds of future conditions. Future-more-vivid conditions take the future indicative in both the protasis and the apodosis.
For convenience in English, the future indicative in the first clause "if the soldiers will capture" is usually translated as a present:

If the soldiers capture the city, the poets will sing.

Sometimes in this type of condition the future perfect is used instead of the ordinary future indicative:

If the soldiers capture the city, the poets will sing.

Future-less-vivid conditions take the present subjunctive in both the protasis and the apodosis. In Latin these sentences are felt to imagine the situation less definitely or "vividly" than the more vivid examples.

Often these sentences are translated using "should" for the first clause and "would" for the main clause:

If the soldiers should capture the city, the poets would sing.

The queen would be miserable if the poet should not sing.

Occasionally a sentence will take the future indicative in one clause and the present subjunctive in the other. Such sentences are known as mixed future conditions.

Contrary-to-fact conditions refer to something unreal. (They are sometimes known as unreal conditions.) There are three kinds.

Present contrary-to-fact conditions refer to what is unreal in present time. They take the imperfect subjunctive in both the protasis and the apodosis: If the soldiers were capturing the city, the poets would be singing.

We know from both the Latin and the English translation that these things are not happening now.

If the protasis is negated, it is happening:

We know from both the Latin and the English translation that these things are not happening now.
If I were not walking to the sea, I would be working.

From this it is clear that I am walking to the sea and therefore that I am not working.

Past contrary-to-fact conditions refer to what is unreal in past time. They take the pluperfect subjunctive in both the protasis and the apodosis: SōÀ mōÀliteÀs urbem ceÀpissent,

If the soldiers had captured the city, the

poeÀtae cecinissent.

poets would have sung.

Past contrary-to-fact conditions refer to what is unreal in past time. They take the pluperfect subjunctive in both the protasis and the apodosis: SōÀ mōÀliteÀs urbem ceÀpissent,

If the soldiers had captured the city, the

poeÀtae cecinissent.

poets would have sung.

3 Some grammars refer to this type as future most vivid or future more vivid with emphatic protasis.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

137

We know from both the Latin and the English translation that these things did not happen then in the past.

LaboÀraÀvisseÀmus nisōÀ ad mare

We would have worked if we had not

ambulaÀvisseÀmus.

walked to the sea.

Mixed contrary-to-fact conditions refer to something that is unreal in the present because of something unreal in the past. They take the pluperfect subjunctive in the if clause and the imperfect subjunctive in the main clause: SōÀ mōÀliteÀs urbem ceÀpissent, poeÀta

If the soldiers had captured the city, the

canerent.

poets would be singing.

We know from both the Latin and the English translation that the soldiers did not capture the city in the past and that therefore the poets are not singing now.

Exercises

5. Translate the following conditional sentences. Then identify what type they are.

1. SōÀ reÀx deÀmeÀns regnum deÀleÀbit, poeÀtae RoÀmam fugient.

______________________________________________________

______________________________________________________

______________________________________________________

2. NisōÀ reÀx deÀmeÀns regnum deÀleÀvisset, poeÀtae RoÀmam noÀn fuÀgissent.

______________________________________________________
3. Nisiō fōlius õdem servet, pater sit miserrimus.


5. Nisi illoō tempore fōlius õdem servavit, pater nunc esset miserrimus.


7. Sō reĀx poēētaēs interēciat, populus timeat.

8. Sō reĀx deĀmeāns poēētaēs interēcerit, populus multum timeābit.

9. Sō aē reAge deĀmentō poēēta magnus interfectus esset, paēcem reĀgōānā deĀleāvisset.
10. Sōä poēta magnus a reāge intercieātur, reāgōāna paācem deāleābit.

6. Translate the following sentences.

1. Memoriam quoque ipsam cum voāce perdidisseāmus sōā tam in nostraā potestaāte esset oblōvōscōā quan taceāre.

2. Multa ioca solent esse in epistulōās quae, proālata sōā sint, inepta videantur.

3. Sōā teā parentēas timeārent neque eoās ulla ratioāne plaācaēre posseeās, ab eoārum oculōās alīquoā conceāderēās.

4. Quod sōā invenōāreātur aliqua cōāvitaās in quaā neāmoā peccaēret, supervacuus esset inter innocenteās oāraētor sōācut inter saānoās medicus.

5. Sed quid oppoānās tandem sōā negem meā umquam ad teā istāās litterāās mōāsisse?
6. Die As iam me de ciat so quae do Ac o in eam sententiam possunt co Aer expro Amere.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

139

Vocabulary

memoria, -ae, f.
memory
quoque
also, in the same way
vox, voAcis, f.
voice
perdo, perdere, perdid o, perditus
lose, destroy
obl oAv oAscor, obl oAv oAsc o, obl oAtus sum
forget
taceo, taceAre
be silent
i cum, o, n.
joke
epistula, -ae, f.
letter
proAero
bring forward, expose
video
(in passive) seem
ineptus, -a, -um
foolish
pareAns, parentis, m.=f.
ratio, -onis, f. reasoning, way
pla, pla
please
oculus, -ōs, m. eye
aliquo (adv.) to some other place
conce, conce
do, do
withdraw
quod sō
but if
invenio, invenō
to and
vita, -tais, f. citizenry, state
ne, ne
nobody
pecco, pecca
commit an offense, sin
supervacuus, -a, -um completely unnecessary
innoce, -ntis innocent
o, o
orator, lawyer
sō
just as
anus, -a, -um
CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

Relative Clauses with the Subjunctive

Ordinary relative clauses that take the indicative provide factual information about their antecedent. There are, however, a variety of relative clauses that take the subjunctive to express more complex meanings.

RELATIVE CLAUSE OF CHARACTERISTIC

A relative clause of characteristic gives generalizing or defining information about its antecedent.

Is est quō mortem timeat.
He is (the sort of person) who fears death.
This does not mean merely that he fears death, but that his fear of death is a natural part or result of his character.
Amo nihil quod puer nosceat.
I love nothing (of the sort) which harms children.
Relative clauses of characteristic are often found with such general expressions as Is est quod
He is (the sort) who
Sunt quod
There are those (of the sort) who
Nemo est quod
There is no one (of the sort) who
Nihil est quod
There is nothing (of the sort) which
However, they may just as often have specific antecedents: Cicero erat quod litteras amaret.
Cicero was (the sort of person) who loved letters.
Other relative clauses that take the subjunctive correspond more closely to some of the subordinate clauses described above.

RELATIVE CLAUSE OF PURPOSE
A relative clause with the subjunctive, often after a verb of motion or action, can express purpose:
Reax ad urbem moneas mittet quod
The king will send soldiers to the city in order that they may kill the poets.
It is easier to translate these simply as purpose clauses.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence
141
Sometimes, if a place is indicated, the adverb ubi may be used as the relative: Reax ad urbem moneas mittet ubi
The king will send soldiers to the city in order that they may kill the poets.
order that there they may kill the poets.

Ubi is a relative adverb.

Sometimes a relative clause of purpose will be introduced by quo and contain a comparative adverb:

ReAx urbem capiet quo facilius poeAs

The king will capture the city in order that by this he may kill the poets more easily.

RELATIVE CLAUSE OF RESULT

A relative clause with the subjunctive, often with an intensifier, can express result: ReAx erat tam deAns quo urbem

The king was so insane that he destroyed the city.

It is easier to translate these simply as result clauses.

RELATIVE CLAUSE OF CAUSE

A relative clause with the subjunctive can express cause. Sometimes (but not always) the relative pronoun will be preceded by ut, utpote, or quippe.

ReAx quippe quo deAns esset urbem

The king, because he was insane, destroyed the city.

Cicero ut quo litterAs amaRet

Cicero, in as much as he loved letters, defended the liberty of the people.

Exercises

7. Translate the following sentences.

1. Ad urbem veAnArunt poeAtae quo libroAs scrÃberent.
2. Tam caecōA erant poeAtae quōA perōAculum noAn videArent.

3. Sunt quōA pecuĀniam pluĀs quam libertaĀtem ament.

4 The antecedent of quoĀ here is the whole action of the main clause, i.e., the capturing of the city `by which'' the main clause may be accomplished.

142

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

4. ReAx ut quōA pecuĀniam pluĀs quam lōĀbertaĀtem amaĀret bellum paraĀbat.

5. MōĀliteĀs peteĀbant id quod amaĀrent pluĀs quam pecuĀniam.

8. Translate the following sentences.

1. Quid est quod tuĀ noAn audeaĀs?

2. Tum deĀnique intercipher cum iam neĀmoĀ tam improbus, tam perditus, tam tui similis invenōArōA poterit quōA id noAn iure factum esse fateAetur.

Quamdiu quisquam erit quōA deAfendere audeat, vôĀves.

3. Quid est enim, CatilōAna, quod teA iam in haAc urbe deAlectaĀre possit, in quaĀ neĀmoA est, extra istam coniuAraĀdioAnem perditoArum hominum quōA teĀ

noAn metuat, neĀmo quōA noAn oAderit?
4. Mittitur De Acidius cum paucōs quōs locōs naĀtuĀram perspiciat.

5. Accipite nunc, quaesoĀ, noĀn ea quae ipse in seĀ atque in domesticum decus impuāreĀ et intemperanter, sed quae in noĀs fortuĀnaĀsque, id est in uĀniversam rem puĀblicam, impieĀ ac nefaĀrieĀ feĀcerit.

6. Quid enim meĀ interpoānerem audaĀciae tuae quam neque auctoĀrītaĀs huius ordinis neque existimaĀtioĀ populōĀ RoĀmaĀnōĀ neque leAgeĀs uillae possent coerceĀre?

---

Vocabulary

audeoĀ, audeĀre, ausum sum
daēre
deĀnique (adv.)
finally
intericio, intercere
kill
nemo, neminis
nobody
improbus, -a, -um
base, depraved
similis, -e
similar
invenio, invenire
end
iuare
rightly
fateor, fateare, fasse sum
confess
quamduo (adv.)
as long as
defendo, defendere
defend
vivo, vvere
live
enim
indeed
Catilina, -ae, m.
Catiline
deflecto, deflectere
please, delight
coniuoratio, -onis, f.
conspiracy
metuo, metuere
fear
oAdō̄, oAdisse
hate
Decidius, -ō̄, m.
Decidius
paucō̄, -ae, -a
few
locus, -ō̄, m.
place
naAtuĀra, -ae, f.
nature
perspiciō, perspicere
look over, inspect
accipiō, accipere
receive, hear
quaesō
please
domesticus, -a, -um
domestic, private
decus, decoris, n.
honor
impuĀrē (adv.)
impurely, basely
intemperanter (adv.)
intemperately
uĀniversis, -a, -um
whole, entire
impiē (adv.)
impiously
nefaĀriē (adv.)
monstrously

144

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

quid
(here) why?

interpoÅne, interpoÅnere
place as an obstacle, interpose

audaÅcia, -ae, f.
audacity

auctoÅritaÅs, -taÅtis, f.
authority

ordoÅ, ordinis
order, body of men

existimaÅtioÅ, -oÅnis, f.
judgment, opinion

lex, leÅgis, f.
law

coerceoÅ, coerceÅre
restrain, confine

Participles Revisited

Participles, as stated before, are verbal adjectives. As such, they modify nouns.

MõÅliteÅs canenteÅs templum deÅleÅveÅrunt. The singing soldiers destroyed the temple.

Here the participle functions simply as an adjective, giving us information about the soldiers.

We could also translate this participle more as an adverb, telling us something about how the soldiers performed the action of the main verb: Singing, the soldiers destroyed the temple.

Although the example above is quite simple, participles can often extend this more adverbial usage to do the work of entire subordinate clauses. For example, they may have temporal force, simply correlating their action in time with the main verb:

MõÅliteÅs urbem capienteÅs templum
derelative clause

When they were capturing the city, they
deÅleÅverunt.
destroyed the temple.
They may have causal force, explaining the action of the main verb: MōÂliteÅs urbem capienteÅs gaudeÅbant. Because they were capturing the city, the soldiers were happy.

The presence of the word tamen may show that a participle is being used concessively: MōÂliteÅs urbem capienteÅs templum Although they were capturing the city, tamen noÅn deÅleÅveÅrunt. nevertheless the soldiers did not destroy the temple.

A participle can act as the protasis of a conditional sentence. When it does, the main verb will indicate what type of conditional sentence it is.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

MōÂliteÅs urbem capienteÅs templum If the soldiers capture the city, they will deÅleÅbunt. destroy the temple.

The future indicative deÅleÅbunt indicates a future-more-vivid conditional sentence.

MōÂliteÅs urbem capienteÅs templum If the soldiers were capturing the city, deÅleÅrent. they would be destroying the temple.

The imperfect subjunctive deÅleÅrent indicates a present contrary-to-fact conditional sentence. Urbs capta deÅleÅta esset. If it had been captured, the city would have been destroyed.

The pluperfect subjunctive deÅleÅta esset indicates a past contrary-to-fact conditional sentence. Although in an isolated sentence like this such different possibilities may seem arbitrary, the actual context of written Latin will make it easier to see how best to translate such hard-working participles.

Exercise

9. Translate the following using as many of the above senses of the participle as is reasonably possible.
Ablative Absolute

A participle together with the noun it modifies, both in the ablative case, form a construction known as the ablative absolute. Together they represent another set of circumstances that accompanies the main clause in the sentence.

Mōālitibus urbem capientibus reōx

With the soldiers capturing the city, the king was afraid.

146

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

Although it lacks a subordinating conjunction, the ablative absolute is like a subordinate clause in that it cannot stand on its own. However, its subject must be different from that of the main clause.5

Litterōs recitaōs reōx gemuit.

With the letter having been read, the king groaned.

Like other participles, the participle in an ablative absolute may have different meanings based on context:

Because the letter had been read, the king groaned.
When the letter had been read, the king groaned.

Although the letter had been read, the king groaned.

Relative time applies. Whatever the force of recitaÃ­tÃ³s, its perfect tense shows time prior to that of the main verb gemuit.

ReÃ­ge moriente,6 reÃ­gÃ³nana tamen

Although the king was dying, the queen disceÃ­ssit.

departed.

The present participle shows time simultaneous with the perfect disceÃ­ssit. Tamen indicates that the ablative absolute should be translated as a concessive clause.

PoeÃ­tÃ³s interfectÃ³s reÃ­x tamen timeÃ­bat.

Although the poets had been killed,

nevertheless, the king was afraid.

The perfect participle shows time prior to the main verb.

An ablative absolute can function as the protasis of a conditional sentence: MõÃ­litibus captã³s, reÃ­x noÃ­n timuisset.

If the soldiers had been captured, the king would not have been afraid.

The pluperfect subjunctive timuisset indicates that the sentence is a past contrary-to-fact conditional sentence.

Sometimes an ablative absolute will not contain a participle, but another noun or adjective in the ablative that acts as a predicate: PoeÃ­taÃ³ reÃ­ge feÃ­lix erit reÃ­gã³nana.

If the poet is king, the queen will be happy.

Here reÃ­ge is predicate to the subject. The verb sum, `to be,'' has no participle that could be used here, but the sense may be supplied.

Exercises

10. Translate the following.

1. Servã³s fugientibus, mõÃ­liteÂ³s urbem deÂ³leÂ³veÂ³runt.

5 Absolute” in this sense means free from connection to the main clause.

6 When the singular of the present participle is used in an ablative absolute, it takes the ending -eÂ³ instead of -oÂ³.
CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

2. ServōÅs fugientibus, mōÅliteÅs urbem deÅleÅbunt.

3. ServōÅs fugientibus mōÅliteÅs urbem deÅleÅrent.

4. Urbe aÅ mōÅlitibus deÅleÅtaÅ imperaÅtor claÅmaÅvit seÅ esse reÅgem.

5. Urbe aÅ mōÅlitibus deÅleÅtaÅ imperaÅtor seÅ esse reÅgem claÅmaÅvisset.

6. Urbe aÅ mōÅlitibus deÅleÅtaÅ imperaÅtor seÅ esse reÅgem claÅmaÅbit.

7. ImperaÅtoÅre seÅ esse reÅgem claÅmaÅnte servōÅ ex urbe fugieÅbant.

8. ImperaÅtoÅre reÅge servōÅ multum timeÅbunt.

9. ImperaÅtoÅre reÅge servōÅ multum timuissent.

10. ImperaÅtoÅre seÅ esse reÅgem urbis claÅmaÅnte mōÅliteÅs tamen discesseÅrunt.

11. Translate the following sentences.
1. Itaque vastōs omnibus eoārum agrōs, vōcōs aedīciōsque inceānsōs, Caesar exercitum reduxit et in hōāherniōs collocavit.

2. Exiguaā parte aestātis reliqua Caesar tamen in Britanniam proāscôscô contendit.

3. Et sōācut vetus aetaōs vōādit quid ultimum in libertāte esset, ita noās quid in servituāte, ademptō per inquōsātioās etiam loquendō audiendōque commercioā.

148

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

Vocabulary

itaque (adv.)
and so

vastoā, vastāre
lay waste, destroy

agrum, -ō, n.

vōcūs, -ō, m.

vōcūs, -ō, m.
village

aedīciōm, -ō, n.
building
incendō, incendere
burn

Caesar, Caesaris, m.
Caesar

exercitus, -uās, m.
army

reduōco, reducere
lead back

hōberna, -oārum, n. pl.
winter camp

colloco, collocaēre
put in place, settle, locate

exiguus, -a, -um
small

aestās, -taētis, f.
summer

relōquus, -a, -um
remaining, left over

Britannia, -ae, f.
Britain

proāscor, proāscō, profectus sum
set forth

contendo, contendere
make an effort, hurry

vetus, veteris
old

aetaēs, -taētis, f.
time, age

ultimus, -a, -um
furthest, most extreme
Indirect Statement

An indirect statement is the reporting of another statement, originally "direct."

Direct:
The poets are working in the field.

Indirect:
He says that the poets are working in the field.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

English uses the conjunction "that" to make a subordinate clause of the original direct statement.

Latin does not express indirect statement by subordinate clause. Instead, it uses a subject accusative and infinitive construction. That is, the subject of the statement given in indirect form will be put into the accusative case and the verb in the infinitive:

Dicit poetae in agro laborare.
He says that the poets are working in the
field.

The English word "that" must be supplied in the translation, though the Latin does not have it.

Any word signifying thought, speech, feeling, rumor, etc. can initiate an indirect statement:

Ruamor erat poetae in agro
There was a rumor that the poets were
Remember that, like participles, infinitives in Latin show only three tenses: present, perfect, and future. Also like participles, infinitives in an indirect statement must be translated according to the rules of relative time.

The present infinitive shows time simultaneous with that of the main verb: Dōcebat poeëtaës in agro laboëre.

He said that the poets were working in the field.

Here the present infinitive laboëre shows time simultaneous with the main verb dōcebat in the imperfect tense and so is translated `were working.'

Dōcet poëtaës in agro laboëre.

He will say that the poets are working.

The perfect infinitive shows time prior to that of the main verb: Dōcit poëtaës in agro laboëvisse.

He says that the poets worked in the field.

Dōcebat poëtaës in agro laboëvisse.

He said that the poets had worked in the fields.

Dōcet poëtaës in agro laboëvisse.

He will say that the poets have worked in the fields.

The future infinitive shows time subsequent to that of the main verb: Dōcit poëtaës in agro laboëtuës esse.

He says that the poets will work in the field.

Dōcebat poëtaës in agro laboëtuës esse.

He said that the poets would work in the field.

Dōcet poëtaës in agro laboëtuës esse.

He will say that the poets will work in the field.
Here the English says ‘are working.’ It means they will be working at the same time as he says it.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

Note that the form of the future infinitive laboÅraÅtuÅroÅs esse must agree in gender, number, and case with the subject accusative poeÅtaÅs, which is masculine accusative plural.

A subject of different gender and number would require a different form: DðAcit feÅminaÅm in agroÅ laboÅraÅtuÅram

He says that the woman will work in the esse.

@eld.

Here laboÅraÅtuÅram agrees with the feminine noun feÅminam.

This consideration also applies to the perfect passive infinitive: DðAcit urbem captam esse.

He says that the city was captured.

Here captam must agree with the feminine urbem.

Exercises

12. Translate the following. Pay particular attention to the relative time of the infinitive and the main verb.

1. PutaÅmus reÅgõÅnam esse miseram.

______________________________________________________

______________________________________________________

2. PutaÅmus reÅgõÅnam miseram fuisse.

______________________________________________________

______________________________________________________

3. PutaÅmus reÅgõÅnam cum noÅbõÅs noÅn locuÅtuÅram esse.

______________________________________________________

______________________________________________________

4. Putat maÅtreÅs mõÅlitum mortuoÅrum ad mare ambulaÅre.

______________________________________________________

______________________________________________________

5. PutaÅbat maÅtreÅs mõÅlitum mortuoÅrum ad mare ambulaÅvisse.

______________________________________________________

______________________________________________________
6. RuÅmor est maÅtreÅs mõÅlitum mortuoÅrum ad mare ambulaÅtuÅraÅs esse.

7. RuÅmor erat matreÅs mõÅlitum mortuoÅrum ad mare ambulaÅtuÅraÅs esse.

8. DôÅcit animaÅlia aÅ puerôÅs spectaÅrôÅ.

9. DôÅcit animaÅlia aÅ puerôÅs spectaÅta esse.

10. DôÅxit animaÅlia a pueÅrôÅs spectaÅrôÅ.

11. DôÅxit animaÅlia a pueÅrôÅs spectaÅtaÅ esse.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

12. DôÅxit pueroÅs animaÅlia spectatuÅros esse.

13. DôÅxit animaÅlia pueroÅs spectatuÅra esse.

14. NeÅmoÅ creÅdit reÅgem poeÅtaÅs interfectuÅrum esse.

15. Quis creÅdat reÅgem poÅetaÅs interfeÅcisse?

13. Translate the following sentences.

1. CreÅdibile est igitur tantum facinus nullam ob causam esse commis-sum?

2. Iam intelligenÅs multoÅ meÅ vigilaÅre aAcriors ad saluÅtem quam teÅ ad perniciem reôÅ puÅbleriae.
3. Dolebam, dolebam, patres conscripto, rem publicam vestræs quondam meæsque consilioæs conservatam brevæ tempore esse perituaram.


5. Homo disertus non intelligit eum quem contrae dòæcit laudæarem aæ seæ; eoæs apud quos dòæcit vituperaæarem.
igitur (adv.)
therefore, then
facinus, facinoris, n.
crime
committō, committere
commit
intelligo, intelligere
understand, discern
vigilo, vigilāre
keep watch, stay awake
aācer, -cris, -cre
sharp, keen
saluōs, -uātis, f.
health, safety
pernicieōs, -eāōs, f.
destruction, ruin
doleō, doleāre
grieve, be in pain
patreōs conscriptōs
senators
coānsilium, -ōs, n.
advice, planning
quondam (adv.)
at some time in the past, formerly
conservō, conservāre
save, preserve
brevis, -e
brief, short
pereo, perōāre, periōs, perituāre
perish, die
enim
for
philosophus, -ō, m.
philosopher
omnōno (adv.)
entirely
ceAnseo, ceAnseAre
judge
huAnAnus, -a, -um
of humans
proAcuAraAtioA, -oAnis, f.
concern, care, responsibility
veArus, -a, -um
true
sententia, -ae, f.
opinion, thought
pietaAs, -taAtis, f.
devotion, loyalty
sanctitaAs, -taAtis, f.
moral purity, sanctity
religioA, -oAnis, f.
religion
autem
moreover
quidem
indeed
noAbilis, -e
noble
raAtioA, -oAnis, f.
reason, reckoning
mundus, -ōd, m. 
world

administroĀ, administraĀre 
conduct, manage, administer

regoĀ, regere 
rule

8 The fourth principal part given here is the future active participle.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

153

disertus, -ā, -um 
learned, clever

intelligoĀ, intelligere 
understand

laudoĀ, laudaĀre 
praise

vituperoĀ, vituperaĀre 
criticize

Indirect Question

Questions in Latin are often introduced by interrogative words or expressions such as the following:

quis, quid 
who, what

quoĀ modoĀ 
how

quam ob rem 
why

cuĀr 
why

quandoĀ 
when

ubi
An indirect question, as the name suggests, is a question reported in indirect form. Latin expresses indirect questions as subordinate clauses. The interrogative word of the original question acts as a subordinating conjunction, and the verb of the original direct question goes into the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence.

Quis hoc dōÄcīt?
Who says this?
Rogat quis hoc dōÄcat.
He asks who says this.
The original direct question is now subordinated to the main verb rogat.
The present subjunctive expresses time simultaneous with the main verb in primary sequence. (It stands for an original present indicative.) Rogat quis hoc dōÄxerit.
He asks who said that.
The perfect subjunctive expresses time prior to the main verb in secondary sequence.
Because there is no future subjunctive, to express time subsequent to the main verb in an indirect question, Latin uses the subjunctive of the active periphrastic (see p. 63).
Rogat quis hoc dictuÄrus sit.
He asks who is going to (will) say this.
Here the present subjunctive of the active periphrastic is used in primary sequence.
In secondary sequence, the imperfect subjunctive expresses time simultaneous with the main verb:
RogaÄvit quis hoc dōÄceret.
He asked who was saying this.

To express time subsequent to the main verb in secondary sequence, the imperfect subjunctive of the active
periphrastic is used: Rogavit quis hoc dicturus esset.
He asked who was going to say this.

Direct questions may not always be introduced by an interrogative word: Laborat?
Does he work?

In such cases Latin may use the word utrum or the interrogative enclitic -ne.
Rogo laboaretne.
I ask whether he works.
Rogo utrum laboaret.

Exercises
14. Translate the following.
1. Môrarumur car clameas.
   ________________________________________________________
   ________________________________________________________
3. Nescio car clama verint.
   ________________________________________________________
4. Scôatis quibus rex aurum donaturus sit?
   ________________________________________________________
   ________________________________________________________
5. Sciebaatis cui rex aurum donaturus esset.
   ________________________________________________________
   ________________________________________________________
6. Mihi docere no aluit quo modo môleites urbem deAleavisent.
   ________________________________________________________
   ________________________________________________________
7. NeAmo mihi docere potest quam ob rem urbs a môleitibus deAleators.
   ________________________________________________________
   ________________________________________________________
8. DôAc mihi aA quoA interfectus sit reAx.
   ________________________________________________________
9. Rogaavit cuär non amāreámur.

10. Quis rogaavit cuär noán amaátōā esseámus?

15. Translate the following sentences.

1. Ego quid ille et contraā ille quid ego sentōārem et spectaārem videābat.

2. Ille quid ego et contraā ego quid ille sentōāret et spectaāret videābam.


4. Itaque hodieā perāciām ut intelligat quantum aā meā beneāciōnum tum acceāperit.

5. Et sōācut vetus aetaās vōādit quid ultimum in libertaāte esset, ita noās quid in servituāte, ademptoā per inquōāsōātioāneās etiam loquendōā audiendōāque commercioā.

Vocabulary

corresa (adv.)
on the other side, on the other hand

sentio, sentôre
feel, think

specto, specta re
look at, watch for

iste, ista, istud
that (often with contempt)

mulier, mulieris, f.
woman

vene num, -ô, n.
poison

unde
from where?

quem ad modum
in what manner?

itaque
and so, in this manner

hodie (adv.)
today

per®cio, per®cere
accomplish, effect

intelligo, intelligere
understand

quantus, -a, -um
how great?

bene®cium, -ô, n.
bene®t, favor

tum
at that time

accipio, accipere
receive, take, accept

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

vetus, veteris
old

aetas, -taētis, f.
time, age

ultimus, -a, -um
furthest, most extreme

libertas, -taētis, f.
liberty

servitus, -tuētis, f.
slavery

adimō, adimere, adeōmō, ademptus
remove, take away

iniquitas, -atis, f.
trial

loquor, loquō, locūtus sum
speak

commercium, -ō, n.
exchange, commerce

Exercise

16. (Advanced reading) Translate the following passage and do the exercise at the end.

In this opening passage from his speech Pro Caelio, Cicero comments on the unusual nature of a trial that is taking place on a public holiday, when the courts would normally be closed.

Sō quis, iūdices, forte nunc sit ignarius leōgum, iūdicioārum, consuetuādinis nostrae, miretur profectō quae sit tanta atrociās huius causae quod dieābus festōs luādōisque puālicōs, omnibus forensibus negōtiās intermissōs, uānum hoc iūdiciōm exerceātur, nec dubitēt quō An tantō facinoris reus arguātur ut eo neglectō cōavitāsa staēre noān possit;

(The passage continues on p. 160.)

Vocabulary

iūdex, iūdīcis, m.
judge
forte
perhaps
adsum, adesse
be present
ignaÅrus, -a, -um
ignorant, without knowledge
( gen.)
lex, leÅgis, f.
law
iuÅdicium, ôÅ, n.
trial
consueÅtuÅdoÅ, -tuÅdinis, f.
habit, practice
môÅror, môÅraÅrôÅ, môÅraÅtus sum
wonder
profectoÅ
undoubtedly
tantus, -a, -um
so great
atroÅcitaÅs, -taÅtis, f.
terribleness
causa, -ae, f.
case
dieÅs festus
holiday
CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence
157
luÅdus, ôÅ, m.
game, entertainment
publicus, -a, -um
public
forensis, -e
pertaining to the law courts
negoätium, -ō, n.
business
intermittoät, intermittere, intermissus interrupt, suspend
exerceät, exerceäre
exercise, practice, conduct
facinus, facinoris, n.
crime
reus, -ō, m.
defendant
arguoät, arguere
accuse
neglegoät, neglegere, negleåxō, negleåctus
neglect
cōavitástis, -taätis, f.
citizenry, state
stoät, staåre
stand

Exercise
1. Identify and explain the tense and mood of adsit.

2. Identify and explain the tense and mood of mōåreåtur.
3. Identify and explain the tense and mood of sit.

4. Explain the case of diebus festas.

5. What kind of construction is omnibus forensibus negoatiis intermissis?

6. Identify and explain the tense and mood of arguatur.

7. Identify and explain the tense and mood of possit.
The section above on indirect statement deals with the indirect expression of simple sentences consisting of one independent clause. Such a clause, in indirect form, puts its subject in the accusative case and its verb in the infinitive.

When complex sentences are put into indirect statement, the main and subordinate clauses behave differently. The main clause, as explained above, takes the subject accusative and infinitive construction. Subordinate clauses generally put their verbs into the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence and relative time.

Quamquam urbs deæletur poëtae
Although the city is being destroyed,
tamen manent.
nevertheless the poets are remaining.

DôAcit quamquam urbs deAleaAtur,
He says that although the city is being
poëtas tamen manœAre.
destroyed, nevertheless the poets are
remaining.

The present subjunctive stands for an original present indicative in primary sequence, expressing time simultaneous with the main verb.

Sometimes the subject and infinitive may enclose the subordinate clause: DôAcit poëtaAs quamquam urbs deAleaAtur manœAre tamen.

In secondary sequence, only the subordinate clause is affected.

DôAcit quamquam urbs deAleAreAtur,
He said that although the city was being
poëtaAs tamen manœAre.
destroyed, nevertheless the poets were
remaining.

Now the imperfect subjunctive stands for the original present indicative in secondary sequence, expressing time simultaneous with the main verb.

All the considerations of relative time will apply in translation: DôAcit quamquam urbs deAleAta esse.

He said that although the city had been
poëtaAs tamen maAnsuAroAs esse.
destroyed, nevertheless the poets
would remain.

Here the pluperfect subjunctive deAleAta esse represents time prior to the main verb dôAcit in a subordinate clause in indirect statement in secondary sequence. The future infinitive represents time subsequent to that of the main
Subordinate clauses that normally take the subjunctive, not surprisingly, will still take the subjunctive in indirect statement:

**CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence**

159

Cum urbs deAleatur, poeatae fugient.  
Because the city is being destroyed, the poets will flee.

Dicit cum urbs deAleatur, poetas  
He says that because the city is being destroyed, the poets will flee.

Relative Clauses in Indirect Statement

Relative clauses in indirect statement also take the subjunctive: ReX quod urbem deAleavit deAmeAns est.  
The king who destroyed the city is insane.

Dicit reagem quod urbem deAleaverit  
He says that the king who destroyed the city is insane.

Here the perfect subjunctive deAleaverit represents time prior to the main verb dicit in a relative clause in indirect statement in primary sequence.

Dicit reagem quod urbem deAleavisset  
He said that the king who had destroyed the town was mad.

Here the pluperfect subjunctive deAleavisset represents time prior to the main verb dicit in a relative clause in indirect statement in secondary structure.

Sometimes, however, relative clauses inside an indirect statement will take the indicative. This usually means that the writer of the sentence is giving this information, adding it to the original direct statement: Dicit reagem quod urbem deAleavit  
He says that the king who (I am actually
telling you) destroyed the city is mad.

Although this translation is somewhat exaggerated, it is meant to show the difference between the indicative and subjunctive. The indicative tells you that the relative clause has been inserted by the writer, or at least that he confirms the truth of its contents.

Exercises

17. Translate the following sentences.

1. Quod deā lōābertaāte claāmant reāx poēaās interācit.

2. Reāgōāna dōācit reāgem quod deā lōābertaāte claāment poēaās interācere.

3. Reāgōāna dōāceābat reāgem quod deā lōābertaāte claāment poēaās interācere.

4. Reāgōāna dōācit reāgem quod deā lōābertaāte claāmārent poēaās interācisse.

5. Reāgōāna dōācit reāgem poēaās quod deā lōābertaāte claāmārent interfectuārum esse.

6. Reāgōāna dōāceābat reāgem poēaās quod deā lōābertaāte claāmārent interfeācisse.
7. ReÁgôÁna dòÁaceÁbat reÁgem poeÁtaÁs quod deÁ lòÁAbertaÁte claÁmaÁvissent interfectuÁrum esse.

8. ReÁgôÁna dòÁaceÁbat reÁgem quòÁ populum timeÁret poeÁtaÁs quod deÁ lòÁAbertaÁte claÁmaÁvissent interfeÁcisse.

9. ReÁgôÁna dòÁaceÁbat reÁgem quòÁ populum timeÁret poeÁtaÁs quod deÁ lòÁAbertaÁte claÁmaÁrent interfectuÁrum esse.

18. (Advanced reading; continued from p. 156) Translate the following passage and do the exercise at the end.

IÁdem cum audiat esse leÁgem quae deÁ seÁditioÁsõÁs consceleraÁtõÁsque cõÁvibus quõÁ armaÁtõÁ senaÁtum obseÁderint, magistraÁtibus vim attulerint, rem puÁblicam oppugnaÁverint, coÁtõÁdieÁ quaeÁrõÁ iubeat, leÁgem noÁn improbet, crõÁmen quod verseÁtur in iudicioÁ requõÁrat; cum audiat nullum facinus, nullam audaÁciam, nullam vim in iuÁdicium vocaÁrõÁ, sed adulescentem illustrõÁ ingenioÁ, industriaÁ, graÁtiaÁ accuÁsaÁrõÁ ab eÁius fõÁlioÁ quem ipse in iuÁdicium et vocet et vocaÁverit, oppugnaÁrõÁ autem opibus meretruÁcias, illõÁus pietaÁtem noÁn reprehendat, muliebrem libõÁdinem comprimendam putet, voÁs laboÁrioÁsos existimet, quibus otioÁsõÁs neÁ in commuÁnõÁ quidem oÁtioÁ liceat esse.

(This passage continues on p. 165.)

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

161
Vocabulary

lex, leGis, f.
law

seAditioAsus, -a, -um
rebellious, treasonous

consceleraAtus, -a, -um
criminal, wicked

côAvis, côAvis, -ium, m.
citizen

armaAtus, -a, -um
armed

senaAtus, -uAs, m.
senate

obsideoÂ, obsideÂre, obseAdóÂ, obsessus
besiege, occupy

magistraAtus, -uAs, m.
magistracy, holder of office

vôÂm afferre
inict violence upon
oppugno, oppugna
attack
costodie (adv.)
everyday, daily
quaero, quaerere
(here) hold a trial or inquiry
iubo, iube
command
improbo, improba
disapprove
crimen, criminis, n.
crime, criminal charge
verso, versa
handle
iudicium, -i, n.
trial
requo, requere
ask
facinus, facinoris, n.
crime
audacia, -ae, f.
outrageous boldness
voco, vocare
call
adulescens, -ntis, m.
young man
162
CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence
illustri, -e
outstanding, illustrious

ingenium, -i, n.
talent

industria, -ae, f.
diligence

graitia, -ae, f.
favor, influence

accusatio, accusaere
accuse

autem
moreover

ops, opis, f.
wealth, resources

meretrictius, -a, -um
of a prostitute

pietas, -atis, f.
loyalty, devotion

reprehendo, reprehendere

and fault with

muliebris, -e
pertaining to a women

libido, -inis, f.
lust

comprimio, comprimere
suppress, check

puto, putaere
think

laborioasus, -a, -um
very hard-working

existimio, existimaere
judge, reckon
oÂtioÂsus, -a, -um
at leisure, on vacation
neÂ. . .quidem
not even
commuÂnis, -e
belonging to all
oÂtium, -õÂ, n.
leisure
Exercise
1. Explain the case of leÂgem.
   ______________________________________________________
   ______________________________________________________
2. Explain the tense and mood of obseÂderint.
   ______________________________________________________
   ______________________________________________________
3. Explain the case of illustrõÂ ingenioÂ.
   ______________________________________________________
   ______________________________________________________
   ______________________________________________________
4. Explain the tense and mood of vocet.
   ______________________________________________________
   ______________________________________________________
Conditional Sentences in Indirect Statement
Conditional sentences generally follow the same rules as other complex sentences.
The protasis, since it is a subordinate clause, will put its verb into the subjunctive.
CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence
163
The apodosis, since it is an independent clause, will take a subject accusative and in®nitive construction.
PoeÂta sõÂ laboÂrat feÂlix est.
If the poet works, he is happy.

DōÅcit poeÅtam sōÅ laboÅret feÅlōÅcem esse.

He says that if the poet works, he is happy.

In this simple condition, the present subjunctive laboÅret represents the original present indicative of the protasis, and the present in®nitive esse the present indicative of the apodosis.

DōÅceÅbat poeÅtam sōÅ laboÅraÅret feÅlōÅcem

He said that if the poet worked, he was esse. happy.

In secondary sequence it is the imperfect subjunctive laboÅraÅret that represents the original present indicative.

Future conditional sentences show an interesting simplification. Because of the limited choices of subjunctive and in®nitive to represent them, the more-vivid and less-vivid varieties (see pp. 135±136) become the same: SōÅ urbs deÅleÅbitur, poeÅtae maneÅbunt.

If the city is destroyed, the poets will remain.

DōÅcit sōÅ urbs deÅleÅleÅbitur, poeÅtaÅs

He says that if the city is destroyed, the mansuÅroÅs esse. poets will remain.

In primary sequence the future indicative of the protasis is represented by the present subjunctive, and that of the apodosis by the future in®nitive.

SōÅ urbs deÅleÅeÅbitur, poeÅtae maneant.

If the city should be destroyed, the poets would remain.

DōÅceÅbat sōÅ urbs deÅleÅeÅtur, poeÅtaÅs

He says that if the city should be mansuÅroÅs esse. destroyed, the poets would remain.

The present subjunctive of the protasis remains the same, and the present subjunctive of the apodosis is represented by the future in®nitive because there is really no other option.

In secondary sequence, the protasis will take the imperfect subjunctive: DōÅceÅbat sōÅ urbs deÅleÅreÅtur poeÅtaÅs
He said that if the city were destroyed, 
mansuoRos esse. 
the poets would remain. 
Contrary-to-fact conditions obey their own rule. The subjunctive of the protasis does not change at all, regardless of sequence; it remains the same. The subjunctive of the apodosis, for both past and present contrary-to-fact sentences, is represented by the future active participle with the perfect infinitive of sum, that is, fuisse.

Present

Nisuo urbs deAleAreAtur, poeAtae maneAtent. 
If the city were not being destroyed, the poets would remain.

164

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

DoeAcit nisuo urbs deAleAreAtur, poeAtae
He says that if the city were not being mansuoRos fuisse. 
destroyed, the poets would remain.
In secondary sequence this will remain the same:

DoeAceAbat nisuo urbs deAleAreAtur, poeAtae mansuoRos fuisse.
Past

Nisuo urbs deAleAta esset, poeAtae
If the city had not been destroyed, the mansissent. poets would have remained.

DoeAcit nisuo urbs deAleAta esset, poeAtas
He says that if the city had not been mansuoRos fuisse. 
destroyed, the poets would have remained.

As you can see, what distinguishes present from past contrary-to-fact conditions in indirect statement is only the tense of the subjunctive in the protasis.

Exercises

19. Translate the following sentences. Then identify what type of conditional sentence has been put into indirect
statement.

1. Dō AçôAt söÅ bellum in proÅ vinciaÅ gerâtur, agricolaÅs fugere.

2. Dō Açit söÅ bellum in proÅ vinciaÅ gerâtur, agricolaÅs fugituÅroÅs esse.

3. Dō AceÅbat söÅ bellum in proÅ vinciaÅ gerereÅtur, agricolaÅs fugituÅroÅs esse.

4. Dō Açit söÅ bellum in proÅ vinciaÅ gerereÅtur, agricolaÅs fugituÅroÅs fuisse.

5. Dō Açit söÅ bellum in proÅ vinciaÅ gestum esset, agricolaÅs fugituÅroÅs fuisse.

6. Dō AceÅbat söÅ bellum in proÅ vinciaÅ gestum esset, agricolaÅs fugituÅroÅs fuisse.

20. (Advanced reading) (continued from p. 160) Translate the following passage.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

165

Etenim söÅ attendere dõÅligenter, existimaÅre veÅreÅ deÅ omnòÅ haÅc causaÅ volueritis, söÅc constiteÅtis,
iuÅdiceÅs, nec descensuÅrum quemquam ad hanc accuÅsatioÅnem fuisse cui utrum vellet liceÅret, nec, cum
descensisset, quicquam habituÅrum speÅ fuisse nisòÅ alicuius intoleraÅbilòÅ libòÅdine et nimis acerboÅ odioÅ
nòÅtereÅtur.
Vocabulary

et enim
and indeed
attendō, attendere
pay attention to
dōligenter (adv.)
diligently
existimō, existimāre
judge, reckon
veāre (adv.)
truly
causa, -ae, f.
case
constituo, constituere
establish, decide
iuādex, iuādicis, m.
judge
descendo, descendere, descendō, descensus
descend, stoop to
quisquam, quicquam
anyone, anything
intolerable, intolerable
unendurable, intolerable
lust
excessively, too much
hatred
rest on, rely upon (abl.)

``Fore ut'' Clause

This is a subordinate clause introduced by fore, the future inchoative of sum, and the subordinating conjunction ut. This construction might also be considered a substantive clause of result acting as the subject of fore. See p. 129.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

used form for futuere esse, which may also be used in these constructions. See p. 67.) This construction is used in two different cases.

Because, practically speaking, there is no future passive inchoative in Latin, a future passive idea cannot be expressed in indirect statement with the normal subject accusative and inchoative construction.

Urbs a mōlitibus reāgis deābitur.
The city will be destroyed by the soldiers of the king.

In such cases Latin uses the fore ut (less frequently, futuere esse ut) with the subjunctive;

Dōcit fore ut urbs a mōlitibus reāgis deābitur.
Literally, this means, ``He says that it will be that the city is destroyed by the soldiers of the king.''

However, it is best to combine the elements in translation to convey the future passive idea:

He says that the city will be conquered by the soldiers of the king.

Dōcebat fore ut urbs a mōlitibus
He said that the city would be conquered reāgis deāreābitur.
by the soldiers of the king.

Some Latin verbs lack a fourth principal part. Since the future active participle is formed from the fourth principal part, such verbs cannot form a future active infinitive and, so, will use a fore ut clause to express future ideas in indirect statement.

For example:

He says that the soldiers will not be able to destroy the city.

The verb "to be able" is possum, posse, potuō, . . .

Because this verbs lacks a fourth principal part, a fore ut construction must be used to express this idea.

Dōcit fore ut mōliteĀs urbem deĀleĀre

He says that it will be that the soldiers

noĀn possint.

are unable to destroy the city.

He says that the soldiers will be unable to destroy the city.

DōĀcit fore ut mōĀliteĀs urbem deĀleere

He said that the soldiers would be

noĀn possent.

unable to destroy the city.

Exercise

21. Translate the following sentences.

1. ReĀgōĀna putat fore ut poeĀtae aĀ reĀge interċiantur.

_______________________________________________________

_______________________________________________________

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

167

2. ReĀgōĀna putuĀbat fore ut poeĀtae aĀ reĀge interċerentur.

_______________________________________________________

_______________________________________________________

3. ReĀgōĀna creĀdit fore ut illoĀ dieĀ cōĀveĀs reĀgem timeant.

_______________________________________________________

_______________________________________________________

4. ReĀgōĀna creĀdeĀbat fore ut illoĀ dieĀ cōĀveĀs reĀgem timeĀrent.
5. RuÅmor erat fore ut reÅx poeÅtaÅs quoÅs reÅgôÅna ceÅlaÅvisset inter®cere noÅn posset.

Impersonal Verbs

Impersonal verbs are so called because they do not have personal subjects. They take a small variety of constructions.

VERBS OF EMOTIONAL DISTRESS

Some impersonal verbs express a variety of unpleasant emotions: piget, pigêÅre, piguit
to disgust
taedet, taedeÅre, taeduit
to weary
paenitet, paeniteÅre, paenituit
to cause repentance
pudet, pudeÅre, puduit
to shame

Such verbs put the person who feels the emotion in the accusative case.

PoeÅtam piget.
The poet is disgusted.
The cause of the emotion may be expressed as a neuter nominative singular pronoun:
Hoc poeÅtam piget.
This thing disgusts the poet.
The cause of the emotion may be expressed by the in®nitive: PoeÅtam piget võÅvere.
It disgusts the poet to live.
The cause of the emotion may be expressed in the genitive case: PoeÅtam taedet võÂtae.
Life wearies the poet.
The poet is weary of life.
ReÅgem avaÅritiae noÅn pudet.
Avarice does not shame the king.
The king is not ashamed of avarice.
CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

Sometimes such verbs will take a subordinate clause introduced by quod, ‘‘that.’’

Such clauses take the indicative:

PoeÅtam piget quod reÅx urbem deÅleÅvit.

That the king destroyed the city disgusts

the poet.

VERBS AND EXPRESSIONS OF PERMISSION AND NECESSITY

A few impersonal verbs express necessity or obligation: licet, liceÅre, licuit
to be permitted

oportet, oporteÅre, oportuit
to be necessary, ®tting

decet, deceÅre, decuit
it is right

necesse est
it is necessary

Such verbs may take an accusative and in®nitive construction: Oportet poeÅtam canere.

It is ®tting that the poet sing.

NoÅn liceÅbat meÅ võÅvere.

It was not permitted for me to live.

They may take the in®nitive with the dative case:

Necesse est poeÅtae canere.

It is necessary for the poet to sing.

They may take a subordinate clause introduced by ut taking the subjunctive: NoÅn liceÅbat ut poeÅtae taceÅrent.

It was not permitted that the poets keep

silent.

VERBS OF INTEREST

There are two impersonal verbs that express `ìnterest’’ or concern: interest, interesse

it concerns, interests

reÅfert, reÅferre
it concerns, interests

Such verbs put the person concerned in the genitive.

The source of concern may be a neuter singular pronoun: Hoc reÅgis reÅfert.

This thing concerns the king.

The source of concern may be an in®nitive or accusative and in®nitive: PoeÅtae reÅfert bene canere.

To sing well concerns the poet.

ReÅgis interest poeÅtam morõÅ.

That the poet die concerns the king.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

169

The source of concern may be a subordinate clause introduced by ut taking the subjunctive:

ReÅgis interest ut poeÅta moriaÅtur.

That the poet die concerns the king.

The source of concern may be an indirect question:

ReÅgis noÅn interest utrum opera poeÅtae It does not concern the king whether the sint bona.

works of the poet are good.

If the person concerned would be expressed with a pronoun, i.e., 'it interests him, her, etc.,' rather than use that pronoun in the genitive, these verbs use the possessive adjective in the feminine ablative singular:10

MeaÅ reÅfert ut poeÅtae serventur.

It concerns me that the poets be saved.

VestraÅ interest utrum reÅx sit deÅmeÅns.

It concerns you whether the king is

insane.

Exercises

22. Translate the following.

1. Quod reÅx bellum parat cõÅveÅs taedet.

________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________

2. PoeÅtae noÅn reÅfert utrum reÅx libroÅs deÅleat.

________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
3. PoeÁta dòÁxit fore ut omneÁs libroÁs deÁleÁrentur.

4. AvaÁritiae reÁgis omneÁs piget.

5. Omnium interest ut lòÁbertaÁs serveÁtur.

6. Taedet reÁgòÁnam reÁgem videÁre.

7. TuaÁ maximeÁ interest abòÁre.

10. This feminine ablative singular is understood to agree with the preÁx reÁ-, the ablative singular of the noun reÁs.

Originally the expression was mea reÁs fertÁ˜my interest bearsÁDthe reÁs combining with fert to produce reÁfert, in which the reÁ perhaps appeared to have become ablative and occasioned the change from mea to meaÁ. However, this use of the feminine ablative singular of the possessive also works for the verb interest, with no reÁ anywhere in sight.

170

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

8. Necesse erit omnibus còÁvibus hunc librum legere.

9. Necesse erit ut hic liber ab omnibus còÁvibus legaÁtur.

10. NoÁn liceÁbat noÁbòÁs ut in paÁce vòÁvereÁmus.
23. Translate the following sentences.

1. In tantâ laetitia cunctae cõ vita tis meâ uânum tristem esse oportebat?

2. Noân tamen pigebit vel incondita ac rude voâce memoriam prioâris servitutis ac testimoârium præsentium bonoârum composuisse.


4. Quandoâ deânique fuit ut quod licet noân liceâret?

5. Ad mortem teâ, Catilõâna, duâcôâ iussuâ coânsulis iam prôâdem oportebat; in teâ conferrôâ peâstem quam tuâ in noâs maâchinaâris.

6. Quid reâfert utrum voluerim âerôâ an gaudeâm factum?

Vocabulary

tantus, -a, -um
so great
laetitia, -ae, f.
happiness
cunctus, -a, -um
all, the whole
cōvitaÅs, -taÅtis, f.
citizenry, state
tristis, -e
depressed, sad
vel
even

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence
171
inconditus, -a, -um
unpolished, rough
rudis, -e
crude, un®nished
voÅx, voÅcis, f.
voice
memoria, -ae, f.
memory, record
prior, prius
earlier, prior
servituÅs, -tuÅtis, f.
slavery
testimoÅnium, õÅ, n.
testimony
praeseÅns, -ntis
present, at hand
compoÅnoÅ, compoÅnere, composuõÅ, compositus
compose, write
dux, ducis, m.
leader
deánique

@nally

mors, mortis, -ium, f.

death

CatilõÅna, -ae, m.

Catiline

duÅcoÅ, duÅcere

lead

iussuÅ (abl.)

by order of (gen.)

coÅnsul, coÅnsulis, m.

consul

iam prõÅdem

for a long time already

conferoÅ, conferre

bring, bestow, confer

pestis, pestis, f.

pestilence, destruction

maÅchinor, maÅchinaÅri, maÅchinaÅtus sum

devise, contrive

gaudeoÅ, gaudeÅre, gaÅvõÅsus sum

be happy

The In®nitive

The in®nitive is a verbal noun, and as such it may be the subject of a sentence: Placet dormõÅre.

It is pleasing to sleep.

VõÅdisse lõÅbertaÅtem bonum est.

It is good to have seen liberty.

Note that the adjective bonum takes the neuter singular. As nouns, in®nitives are treated as neuter singular.

The in®nitive may be the object of a transitive verb: PoeÅta canere optat.

The poet chooses to sing.
MorôÅ praeferimus.
We prefer to die.

Some intransitive verbs, such as possum, take the in®nitive: HomineÅs eÅrectôÅ ambulaÅre possunt.
Men are able to walk upright.

11 A transitive verb is one that takes a direct object.
12 An intransitive verb is one that cannot take a direct object.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

Such an in®nitive is felt to complete the meaning of the verb and is called a complementary in®nitive.

The in®nitive may take a nominative subject and act as the main verb of a sentence:

MiliteÅs claÅmaÅre, fugere, capôÅ.
The soldiers shouted, ¯ed, were
captured.

Because such usages of the in®nitive occur most often among writers of historical narrative, they are called historical in®nitives. Usually they appear in groups.

Gerund and Gerundive

The gerund serves as the verbal noun in the genitive, dative, and ablative cases, and in the accusative with certain prepositions. It will have the normal syntax associated with these different cases.

PoeÅtae est amor canendôÅ.
The poet has a love of singing.
Here the gerund canendôÅ is an objective genitive.

Inter®ciendoÅ reÅx cõÅveÅs terret.
The king terri®es the inhabitants by
killing.

Here the gerund inter®ciendoÅ is an ablative of means.

Although it is a verbal noun, the gerund tends not to govern a direct object. To express a direct object relationship, Latin uses the gerundive. The gerundive is a verbal adjective that, instead of governing a direct object in the accusative case, agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case:

Inter®ciendoÅs poetôÅs reÅx cõÅveÅs terret.
The king will terrify the citizens by
killing poets.

The phrase inter®ciendoÅs poeÅtôÅs is in the ablative case as an ablative of means. It expresses the means by
which the king will terrify the citizens. Though ``the poets"
would normally be expressed as a direct object in any other type of verbal expression, with the gerundive such a
relationship is usually expressed by noun-adjective agreement.

MōẤlitibus est timor urbis deǺlendae.
The soldiers have a fear of destroying the
city.

MōẤliteǺs timent urbem deẤleẤre.
The soldiers are afraid to destroy the
city.

Again, in any other verbal expression, ``the city'' would be the direct object of the verb ``to destroy'':

In the irst example, however, the phrase urbis deǺlendae functions as an objective genitive, so the noun and
gerundive agree in that case.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

173

The gerund and the gerundive in the accusative case with the preposition ad express purpose:
ReǺx mōẤliteǺs mittit ad urbem delendam. The king sends soldiers for the purpose of destroying the city.

This meaning can also be expressed with the genitive followed by the preposition causaǺ:
ReǺx mōẤliteǺs mittit urbis deǺlendae
The king sends soldiers for the sake of
causaǺ.

Supine
The supine is a verbal noun that exists only in the accusative and ablative cases (see Chapter 4, verbal noun section).
The accusative is used to express purpose with a verb of motion:
ReǺx mōẤliteǺs mittit urbem deẤleǺtum.
The king sends soldiers to destroy the
city.

The ablative is used to express respect or speciå®cation: mōẤraÄ́ble dictuǺ
(a thing) wonderful to say.

Exercises
24. Translate the following.
1. Dulce est vôẤvere?
2. Ad provinciam Orbis bellum vōsum.

3. Ad provinciam Orbis ad bellum videndum.

4. Ad provinciam Orbis bellō videndō causa.

5. Poetae intercere erat terribile factum.

13 This is really the ablative of the noun causa, which has this independent usage. It follows a noun in the genitive case and means `for the sake of.'

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

6. In urbe maneAre poeta volebat.

7. Mōlite urbem deAlere timent.

8. Laberta omnium deAlendae causa reAx poetae intercere voluit.

25. Translate the following sentences.

1. O rem noAn modo vōsu foedam sed etiam audōtu!
2. NoAn igitur mōAliēNs perōÅre est melius quam in suaÅ cōAvitaÅte sine armaÅtoÅrum praeÅdioÅ noÅn posse vōÅvere?
3. DieAs iam meÅ deÅ®ciat sõÅ quae dõÅcôA in eam sententiam possunt coÅner exproÅmere.

4. Pro meaÅ perpetuaÅ cupiditaÅte vetrae dõÅgnitaÅtis retinendae et augendae quaesoÅ oÅroÅque voÅs, patreÅs, conscriptõÅ, ut prõÅmoÅ, etsõÅ erit vel acerbum audõÅtuÅ vel increÅdibile aÅ CiceroÅne dictum, accipiaÅtis sine offensioÅne quod dõÅxeroÅ, neÅve id prius quam quaÅle sit explicaÅveroÅ repudieÅtis.

Vocabulary
noÅn modo
not only
foedus, -a, -um
foul
sed etiam
but also
igitur (adv.)
therefore
mõÅlieÅns (adv.)
a thousand times
pereoÅ, perôÅre
die, perish
côÂvitaÅs, -taÅtis, f.
citizenry, state

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

175

armaätus, -a, -um
armed

võavo, võaverere
live

praesidium, -ō̄, n.
protection

deācioā, deācere
be lacking, run out

sententia, -ae, f.
thought, opinion

coañor, coañarō̄, coañatus sum
try, attempt (inf.)

exproāmoā, exproāmere
bring out, reveal

perpetuus, -a, -um
perpetual

cupiditās, -tātis, f.
desire

dōāgnitās, -tātis, f.
dignity, prestige

retineōā, retineâre
retain, keep, maintain

augeōā, augeâre
increase

quaesoā
I ask

patreās conscriptō̄
senators

pròÃmoÂ (adv.)

®rst

vel . . . vel

either . . . or

acerbus, -a, -um

bitter

increÁdibilis, -e

incredible

CiceroÅ, -oÅnis, m.

Cicero

accipioÅ, accipere

accept, hear

offensioÅ, -oÅnis, f.

offense

neÅve

and not ( subj.)

quaÅlis, -e

how, of what kind

explicoÅ, explicaÅre

explain

repudioÅ, repudiaÅre

reject, repudiate

This page intentionally left blank.

Answers to Exercises

Chapter 1

Dat.

pueroÅ

puerôÂs

Acc.
puerum
pueromişti
1. 1. Vocative
Abl.
puerō
puerōtı
2. Nominative
Voc.
puer
puerō
3. Genitive
amōtı
amōtıgı
4. Accusative
Gen.
amōtıği
amōtıgırum
5. Dative
Dat.
amōtıgı
amōtıgısı
6. Ablative
Acc.
amōtıgü
amōtıgısı
Abl.
amōtıgü
amōtıgısı
2.
Sing.
Pl.
Voc.
amōÅce
amōÅcōÅ
Nom.
aqua
aquaē
Gen.
aquaē
aquaē
aquaĀrum
6. 1. regna, regna
Dat.
aquaē
aquōÅs
2. gladioĀrum
Acc.
aquam
aquaĀs
3. virōÅs, virōÅs
Abl.
aquaĀ
aquōÅs
4. librōĀ
5. numeroÅs
3. 1. puellaÅs
6. gaudia, gaudia
2. meÅnsaÅrum, meÅnsōÅs
7. puerōĀ
3. poeĀtae
8. regna
4. terrōs
5. aquārum, aquōs
7. 1. virō
6. feāminaērum, feāminōs
2. gladium
7. terrās
3. bellum, bellum
8. pecūniae
4. ventus
5. amōcoā, amōcoā
4. 1. puella
6. vir
2. terrām
7. numerum
3. poētae, poētaā
8. regnō
4. aquae
5. meānsae, meānsaā
8.
Sing.
Pl.
6. terra
1. Nom.
corpus
corpora
7. ōansulae
Gen.
corporis
corporum
8. luÅna
Dat.
corporòÅ
corporibus
Acc.
corpus
corpora
5. 1.
Sing.
Pl.
Abl.
corpore
corporibus
Nom.
saxum
saxa
2. Nom.
meÅns
menteÅs
Gen.
saxôÅ
saxoÅrum
Gen.
mentis
mentium
Dat.
saxoÅ
saxôÅs
Dat.
mentôÅ
mentibus
Acc.
saxum
saxa
Acc.
mentem
menteÅs=mentõÅs
Abl.
saxoÅ
saxõÅs
Abl.
mente
mentibus
2. Nom.
puer
puerõÅ
dolor
doloÅreÅs
Gen.
puerõÅ
pueroÅrum
Gen.
doloÅris
doloÅrum
177

Copyright 2002 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. Click Here for Terms of Use.

178

Answers to Exercises
Dat.
doloÅrōÅ

doloÅribus

4. third

Acc.
doloÅrem doloÅreÅs

5. fourth

Abl.
doloÅre
doloÅribus

6. second

7. second

9. 1. urbeÅs, urbōÅs (i-stem)

8. ®rst

2. reÅgibus

9. third

3. voÅc̣um

10. third

4. animaÅlibus, animaÅlibus

5. ¯uÅmina, ¯uÅmina

15. 1. liberty (direct object)

6. urbium

2. of the horsemen

7. nocteÅs

3. from, with, in, by rocks=to, for rocks

8. amoÅribus

4. of the poet, for the poet, the poets (subject)

5. ®elds (direct object)

10. 1. sōÅdus, sōÅdus

6. example (subject or direct object)

2. voluptaÅtōÅ, voluptaÅte
7. of the shore
3. urbs, urbem
8. of the appearance=to, for appearance
4. doloÅris
9. to, for the queens=from, with, in, by
5. montem
queens
6. mentis
10. the appearance of liberty
7. animal, animal
11. the king of the poets
8. naÅvis
12. rocks of the ®eld
9. amoÅrõÅ, amoÅre
11. Sing.
Pl.
16. 1. curruÅs
1. Nom.
specieÅs
specieÅs
2. exemplaÅribus
Gen.
specieÅõÅ
specieÅrum
3. reÅgõÅnõÅs, reÅgõÅnõÅs
Dat.
specieÅõÅ
specieÅbus
4. equitibus
Acc.
speciem
specieÅs
5. lōÅtora
Abl.
specieÅ
specieÅbus
2. Nom.
manus
manuÅs
17. 1. poeÅtae, poeÅtaÅ
Gen.
manuÅs
manuum
2. agròÅ
Dat.
manuōÅ
manibus
3. saxum, saxum
Acc.
manum
manuÅs
4. lōÅbertaÅtis
Abl.
manuÅ
manibus
5. reÅgōÅnam
12. 1. reÅs, reÅs
18. 1. puella
puellae
2. dieÄrum
puellae
puelläArum
3. fruÄctuum
puellae
puellõÅs
4. fruÄctibus
puellam
puellaÅs
5. genus 2x, genibus 2x
puellaÅ
puellõÅs
2. dolor
doloÅreÅs
13. 1. genuÅ
doloÅris
doloÅrum
2. uÅsuÅs
doloÅrõÅ
doloÅribus
3. reõÅ
doloÅrem
doloÅreÅs
doloÅreÅs
4. dieÅõÅ, dieÄ
doloÅre
doloÅribus
5. reÅs, rem
3. bellum
bella
bellõÅ
Answers to Exercises

4. spōâritus
spōârituâs

5. noÂbileâs, noÂbileâs, noÂbilôâs
spōârituâs
spōârituum

6. noÂbilia 2x
spōârituôâ
spōâritibus

7. noÂbilis
spōâritum
spōârituâs

8. noÂbilis, noÂbilôâ
spōârituâ
spōâritibus

9. noÂbilem

10. noÂbileâs, noÂbilôâs
4. 1. puella deÃmeÃns
puellae deÃmenteÃs
rem
reÃs
puellae deÃmentis
puellaÃrum deÃmentium
reÃ
reÃbus
puellae deÃmentoÃA
puellÃAs deÃmentibus
6. urbs
urbeÃs
puellam deÃmentem puellaÃs deÃmenteÃs,
urbis
urbium
deÃmentoÃs
urbÃA
urbibus
puellaÃ deÃmentoÃA
puellÃAs deÃmentibus
urbem
urbeÃs, urbÃAs
2. reÃs facilis
reÃs facileÃs
urbe
urbibus
rem facilem
reÀs facileÀs, facilòÀs
reÀ facilòÀ
reÀbus facilibus
1. 1. magnus
5. 1. malae, grandis or malae, grandòÀ
2. magnae
or malae, grandeÀs
3. magnòÀs, magnòÀs
2. malòÀ, grandis or malòÀ, grandeÀs
4. magnoÀrum
3. mala, grandia 2x
5. magnoÀ
4. malòÀs, grandibus 2x
6. magnòÀ, magnòÀ, magnoÀs
5. malaÀrum, grandium
7. magna, magnae, magnaÀs
6. malòÀ, grandeÀs or
8. magnoÀrum
maloÀs, grandeÀs=grandòÀs
9. magna
7. malus, grandis
10. magnaÀrum
8. malae, grandis or malae, grandeÀs
or malae, grandeÀs=grandòÀs
2. 1. reÅx bonus
reÅAgeAs bonōÅ
9. malum, grande 2x
reÅgis bonōÅ
reÅgum bonoÅrum
10. malaÅrum, grandium
reÅgōÅ bonoÅ
reÅgibus bonōÅs
11. malae, grandis
reÅgem bonum
reÅAgeAs bonoÅs
12. maloÅ, grandōÅ
reÅge bonoÅ
reÅgibus bonōÅs
13. maloÅrum, grandium
voc. sing. reÅx bone
14. maloÅs, grandeÅs=grandōÅs
2. urbs pulchra
urbeÅs pulchrae
15. malum, grande 2x
urbis pulchrae
urbium pulchraÅrum
urbōÅ pulchrae
urbibus pulchrōÅs
6. 1. toÅtōÅus, toÅtōÅ
urbem pulchram
urbeÅs=urbōÅs pulchraÅs
2. toÅtaÅ
urbe pulchraÅ
urbibus pulchrōÅs
3. toÅtus
3. bellum duÅrum
bella duÅra
4. toÅtõÅus
bellõÅ duÅrõÅ
belloÅrum duÅroÅrum
5. toÅtõÅus, toÅtõÅ
belloÅ duÅroÅ
bellõÅs duÅrõÅs
6. toÅtõÅus, toÅtõÅ
bellum duÅrum
bella duÅra
7. toÅtoÅ
belloÅ duÅroÅ
bellõÅs duÅrõÅs
7. 1. poeÅta grandior
poeÅtae grandioÅreÅs
3. 1. noÅbilõÅ
poeÅtae grandioÅris
poeÅtaÅrum grandioÅrum
2. noÅbilibus
poeÅtae grandioÅrõÅ
poeÅtis grandioÅribus
3. noÅbile 2x
poeÅtam grandioÅrem poeÅtaÅs grandioÅreÅs=-õÅs
4. noÅbiliÅm
poeÅtaÅ grandioÅrõÅ(-e) poeÅtõÅs grandioÅribus
180
Answers to Exercises
8. 1. reÅs facillima
3. the same wind

4. these girls

5. those rocks

6. that man lives

7. she herself comes

8. that woman herself comes

9. I saw the brother of this man

10. That man will live, this one will die.

2. cuius

5. 1. cui

2. cuius
3. quâ, quoĂs
9. 1. sharp breath
4. cuius, quâĂ
2. most humble voices
5. cuius, quâĂ
3. a most hard king
6. quâřum
4. the greatest luxury
7. quibus 2x
5. the least faith
8. quoĂs
6. a better mind
9. quoĂřum
7. the best wind
10. quibus 2x
8. the greater son
9. a more insane joy
6. 1. aliquôĂ
10. most noble liberty
2. quoĂsque
11. of the most beautiful ships
3. quaedam
12. of the worst animal
4. alicuius
5. quaeque

Chapter 3

7. 1. some money
1. 1. ego
2. each queen
2. noĂs
3. a certain war
3. voès
4. tuè
Chapter 4
2. 1. noès
1. 1. duècoè
2. seè
duècis
3. voèès
duècit
4. seè
duècimus
duècitis
3. 1. haec
duècunt
2. illum
2. venioè
3. eaèrùm
venèès
4. ipsa, ipsae, ipsaèès
venit
5. eoèrùndem
venèèsìmus
6. hòès
venèèsìs
t7. huius
veniunt
8. illòès, illòès
3. iacioè
9. eaèsdem
iacis
10. ipsa
iacit
iacimus
4. 1. that queen
iacitis
2. you (pl.) yourselves
iaciunt

Answers to Exercises
181
2. 1. impleor
venieÅbaÅtis
impleÅris=impleÅre
venieÅbant
impleÅtur
impleÅmur
impleÅminõÅ
5. 1. duÅceÅbar
implentur
duÅceÅbaÅris=duÅceÅbaÅre
2. pellor
duÅceÅbaÅtur
pelleris=pellere
duÅceÅbaÅmur
pellitur
duÅceÅbaÅminõÅ
pellimur
duÅceÅbaÅbantur
pelliminõÅ
2. habeÅbar
pelluntur
habeAbAris=habeAbARe
3. paror
habeAbAAtur
paraAris=paraAre
habeAbAmur
paraAtur
habeAbAminoA
paraAmur
habebantur
paraAminoA
parantur

6. 1. 1st person plural passive:
we were being pushed
3. 1. 1st person plural active: we fill
2. 1st person plural active: we were holding
2. 3rd person singular passive:
3. 1st person singular active: I was leading
he, she, it is led
4. 2nd person plural passive:
3. 3rd person plural active: they hurl
you (pl.) were being pushed
4. 3rd person plural passive:
5. 3rd person plural passive:
they are being prepared
they were being filled
5. 2nd person singular active: you push
6. 3rd person plural active: they were coming
6. 2nd person singular passive:
7. 3rd person singular passive:
you are being pushed
he, she, it was being held
7. 2nd person plural passive:
8. 3rd person singular active:
you (pl.) are being hurled
he, she, it was filing
8. 2nd person plural active: you (pl.) prepare
9. 3rd person plural active: they lead
7. 1. para\(\overline{b}o\)\(\overline{a}\)
10. 1st person plural passive: we are filled
para\(\overline{b}i\)\(\overline{s}\)
para\(\overline{b}i\)
4. 1. imple\(\overline{b}\)\(\overline{a}\)\(\overline{m}\)
para\(\overline{b}\)im\(\overline{u}\)s
imple\(\overline{b}\)\(\overline{a}\)\(\overline{s}\)
para\(\overline{b}\)\(\overline{i}\)\(\overline{t}\)is
imple\(\overline{b}\)\(\overline{a}\)\(\overline{t}\)at
para\(\overline{b}\)\(\overline{u}\)\(\overline{t}\)nt
imple\(\overline{b}\)\(\overline{a}\)\(\overline{m}\)\(\overline{u}\)s
2. du\(\overline{c}\)\(\overline{a}\)m
imple\(\overline{b}\)\(\overline{a}\)\(\overline{t}\)\(\overline{i}\)\(\overline{s}\)
du\(\overline{c}\)\(\overline{e}\)\(\overline{s}\)
imple\(\overline{b}\)\(\overline{a}\)\(\overline{b}\)\(\overline{a}\)\(\overline{t}\)\(\overline{a}\)nt
du\(\overline{c}\)\(\overline{e}\)\(\overline{t}\)\(\overline{e}\)
2. pelle\(\overline{\acute{a}}\)\(\acute{a}\)m
du\(\acute{a}\)\(\acute{e}\)\(\acute{\text{m}}\)\(\acute{u}\)s
pelle\(\acute{a}\)\(\acute{a}\)\(\acute{\text{a}}\)\(\acute{a}\)s
du\(\acute{a}\)\(\acute{e}\)\(\acute{\text{t}}\)\(\acute{a}\)\(\acute{t}\)\(\acute{i}\)s
pelle\(\acute{a}\)\(\acute{a}\)\(\acute{b}\)\(\acute{a}\)t
du\(\acute{a}\)\(\acute{e}\)\(\acute{c}\)\(\acute{e}\)nt
182

Answers to Exercises

2. audiar

12. facerem

audieÀris=audieÀre

faceràs

audieÀtur

faceret

audieÀmur

faceràs

audieÀmus

faceràtis

audientur

facerent

9. 1. 2nd person singular active:

13. duÀcerer

you will prepare
duēcereōris=duēcereēre

2. 1st person singular active: I will fill

duēcereōtur

3. 1st person plural passive: we will be led

duēcereōmur

4. 3rd person singular passive:

duēcereōminō

he, she, it will be heard

duēcerentur

5. 1st person singular active: I will push

6. 3rd person plural passive:

14. 1. 1st person plural present indicative active

they will be prepared

2. 2nd person plural present subjunctive

7. 2nd person plural active:

active

you (pl.) will have

3. 3rd person singular imperfect indicative

8. 1st person plural active: we will push

active

9. 2nd person singular passive:

4. 3rd person singular present subjunctive

you will be filled

passive

10. 2nd person plural passive:

5. 3rd person plural future indicative active

you (pl.) will be led

6. 2nd person singular imperfect subjunctive

active

10. 1. parem
7. 2nd person singular future indicative active
pareÅs

8. 2nd person plural present subjunctive
paret
active
pareÅmus

9. 2nd person plural present indicative active
pareÅtis

10. 1st person singular present subjunctive or
parent
future indicative active
2. faciam

11. 2nd person singular future indicative
faciaÅs
passive
faciat

12. 2nd person singular imperfect subjunctive
faciaÅmus
active
faciaÅtis

13. 2nd person singular future indicative
facian
passive

14. 2nd person singular present indicative
passive or present active in®nitive
11. 1. habear
or present imperative passive,
habeaÅris=habeaÅre
singular
habeaÅtur
15. 2nd person singular present subjunctive
habeā mur

passive
habeā minō ā

16. present imperative active plural
habeantur

17. present imperative active, singular
2. duācar

18. 1st person singular future indicative
duācaāris=duācaāre

passive
duācaātur

19. 1st person plural future indicative passive
duācaāmur

20. 1st person plural imperfect indicative
duācaāminō ā

passive
duācantur

21. 1st person singular future indicative active

Answers to Exercises
183

22. 1st person plural present subjunctive active
17. 1. iubeo ā

23. 2nd person plural present indicative active
2. gereābaāmus

24. 2nd person plural present subjunctive active
3. capitis

passive
4. pellet

25. 2nd person singular imperfect indicative
5. deÅleÅreÅs
   active

6. impleÅbis

26. 2nd person plural future indicative active

7. capis=cape

27. present imperative active, plural

8. dōÅcunt

28. future imperative active, singular

9. habeÅbaÅtis

29. 1st person plural present indicative active

10. iacereÅmus

30. 1st person plural imperfect indicative
    passive

18. 1. deÅlet

31. 2nd person singular present indicative

2. caperis=capere

    passive or present inceptive active or

3. faciaÅmus

    present imperative passive, singular

4. gereÅtis

32. 2nd person singular imperfect subjunctive

5. venieÅbaÅtis

    passive

6. dicaÅmus=dōÅceÅmus

33. present imperative active, singular

7. pellerem

8. impleÅbunt

15. 1. he, she, it says

9. duÅceÅs

2. you will hurl
10. habeAbiminôA
3. they push
4. I will make
19. 1. 1st person singular future perfect
5. they were being destroyed
indicative active
6. we say
2. 1st person plural pluperfect subjunctive
7. manage!
active
8. you will be pushed
3. 3rd person singular future perfect
9. you are led=be led!=to lead
indicative or perfect subjunctive active
10. you (pl.) were coming
4. 1st person singular perfect subjunctive
11. he, she, it walks
active
12. he, she it will be ®illed
5. 2nd person singular perfect indicative
13. they will make
active
14. you (pl.) were being ®illed
6. 3rd person plural perfect indicative active
15. you (pl.) are being captured=be captured!
7. 3rd person plural pluperfect indicative
16. hear!
active
17. let him command=or command
8. 3rd person plural future perfect indicative
18. you have
or perfect subjunctive active
19. it will be waged
9. 2nd person plural perfect indicative active
20. we walk
10. 3rd person singular pluperfect subjunctive active
16. 1. dōcitur
20. 1. you (pl.) had filled
2. duca mur
2. I will have made
3. gereminō
3. you came = you have come
4. dućiminō
4. I loved = I have loved
5. pellebar
5. you (pl.) will have hurled
6. iubear tur
6. you (pl.) had hurled
7. dealeberis = dealebere
7. you (pl.) hurled = you (pl.) have hurled
8. capere
8. they pushed = they have pushed
9. iacimur
9. I said = I have said
10. audiar
10. we said = we have said
184
Answers to Exercises
21. 1. 3rd person singular perfect indicative
9. deÅleÅverint
passive

10. deÅleÅvisset

2. 3rd person singular pluperfect indicative
passive

3. 3rd person plural perfect indicative passive

25. 1. 3rd person plural perfect indicative active

4. 1st person singular perfect indicative
they loved=they have loved
passive

2. 3rd person plural future perfect indicative

5. 1st person plural perfect indicative passive

6. 2nd person singular pluperfect subjective
they will have been led
passive

3. 3rd person plural future perfect indicative

7. 3rd person plural future perfect indicative active

passive

he will have walked

8. 3rd person plural perfect subjective passive

4. 2nd person singular perfect indicative

9. 3rd person singular pluperfect subjective active

passive

you commanded=you have commanded

10. 3rd person plural pluperfect indicative

5. 3rd person singular perfect indicative passive
passive
he was ordered=he has been ordered
22. 1. it was ®lled=it has been ®lled
6. 3rd person singular pluperfect indicative
2. she had been ®lled
passive
3. we were commanded=we have been
it had been destroyed
commanded
7. 1st person plural pluperfect indicative
4. they will have been destroyed
active
5. they had been pushed
we had destroyed
6. it will have been hurled
8. 2nd person plural perfect indicative active
7. they had been captured
you (person plural) ®lled=you (person
8. she has been captured
plural) have ®lled
9. they will have been loved
9. 2nd person plural pluperfect indicative
10. I had been loved
active
you (person plural) had pushed
10. 2nd person plural future perfect indicative
23. 1. captus, -a, -um eris=captus, -a, -um sõÅs
active
2. captus, -a, -um sim
you (person plural) will have captured
3. deAleAtôA, -ae, -a estis
11. 2nd person singular imp. indicative active
4. iactôA, -ae, -ôA eraÅmus
you were walking
5. pulsus, -a, -um esset
12. 1st person singular future indicative
6. impleÅtus, -a, -um est
active2
7. impleÅtus, -a, -um erit=impleÅtus, -a, -um sit
I will push
8. impleÅtus, -a, -um erat
13. 2nd person plural future indicative active
9. impleAtôA, -ae, -a esseÅmus
you (person plural) will roll
10. ductôA, -ae, -a sunt
14. 3rd person plural future indicative active
they will push
24. 1. duÅxisseÅtis
15. 2nd person singular future indicative
2. ceÅperat
passive
3. ceÅpimus
you will be pushed
4. ceÅperoÅ
5. duÅxerit
6. deAleÅverit
1 This form could also be the perfect subjunctive, but this 7. deAleÅveÅrunt
should not be translated in isolation.
8. deAleÅverant
2 This form could also be present subjunctive. See above.
Answers to Exercises

16. 2nd person singular future indicative
you will be pushed

34. 3rd person singular pluperfect indicative passive
they had been hurled

17. 2nd person plural present indicative passive
you (person plural) are led

26. 1. 1st person singular perfect active

18. 2nd person plural imperative indicative

2. 2nd person plural present passive passive

3. 2nd person plural pluperfect active
you (person plural) were being led

4. 2nd person plural pluperfect passive

19. 3rd person plural future indicative passive

5. 2nd person singular imperative passive
they will be led

6. 3rd person singular perfect passive

20. 1st person plural present indicative passive

7. 3rd person plural imperfect active
we are filled

8. 1st person plural present passive

21. 3rd person singular imperative indicative

9. 2nd person plural perfect active passive

10. 3rd person singular pluperfect active
he, she, it was being filled
11. 3rd person singular imperative passive
12. 2nd person singular present passive
   they will be filled
13. 3rd person plural perfect passive
14. 3rd person plural imperative passive
   they will be filled
15. 3rd person singular present active
16. 2nd person plural present active
   I will destroy
17. 1st person plural imperative passive
18. 2nd person singular pluperfect active passive
19. 1st person singular pluperfect passive
   you were being captured
20. 1st person singular perfect active
21. present imperative active person singular capture!
22. 3rd person plural future indicative active
23. 3rd person plural future indicative passive
24. 1st person singular future indicative active
25. 2nd person singular imperative indicative
26. present imperative active person singular capture!
27. 2nd person singular present indicative
27. 1. perfect active infinitive
28. present passive infinitive
29. present imperative person singular, passive
to be waged
be captured!
3. perfect passive infinitive
   present infinitive active
to have been driven
to capture
4. present active infinitive
28. 3rd person singular present indicative
to hurl
   active
5. present passive infinitive
he, she, it hurls
to be destroyed
29. 3rd person plural future indicative active
to hurl
   active
6. future active infinitive
30. 3rd person singular future indicative
   to be about to destroy
7. perfect active infinitive
   passive
to have destroyed
he, she, it will be hurled
31. 3rd person plural perfect indicative passive
28. 1. capturing
   they were hurled=they have been hurled
2. the soldier capturing
32. 2nd person plural future perfect indicative
3. the soldier capturing the city
   active
4. the soldier about to capture the city
   you (person plural) will have hurled
5. captured
33. 3rd person singular imperfect indicative

6. the captured city

passive

7. the city captured by the soldier

he, she, it was being hurled

8. the city captured by the capturing soldier

9. the city captured by the soldier about to say

3 The form is also perfect subjunctive. Do not translate.

something

Answers to Exercises

29. 1. the city has to be destroyed

22. to carry

2. the cities had to be destroyed

23. going

3. the cities will have to be destroyed

24. you (person plural) are able

4. the men are about to destroy the city

25. to be able

5. the men were about to destroy the city

6. the men will be about to destroy the city

Chapter 5

30. 1. they had slipped

2. we will speak

1. 1. noAbiliter

noAbiliter

noAbilius

noAbilissime

3. you use

2. acerbe

acerbicus
acerbissime

4. you will use
3. misere
misierius
miserrime

5. I am about to die
4. male
peius
pessime

6. you (person plural) were fearing
5. bene
melius
optime

7. you (person plural) will fear
8. you (person plural) will have slipped
2. 1. under the moon
9. you will try
2. after the war
10. it has to be gained
3. by the king
11. they speak
4. around the city
12. he, she, it uses
5. through the ®elds
6. without love
31. 1. 3rd person singular present subjective
7. out of the water
2. 2nd person plural imperative subjective
8. with avarice
3. 3rd person plural perfect subjective
9. down from the mountains
4. 1st person plural present subjective
10. against the soldiers
5. 2nd person singular present subjective
11. on account of money
6. 1st person singular pluperfect subjective
12. on behalf of the queen
7. 1st person plural present subjective
13. across the river
8. 1st person plural future indicative
14. before the day
9. 1st person plural present indicative
15. by the poet
10. 2nd person plural present indicative active
32. 1. we will be
Chapter 6
2. they do not wish
3. you (person plural) will be able
1. 1. The boy is the son of the sailor.
4. they are able
predicate nominative
5. you (person plural) wish
2. Avarice is the love of money.
6. he, she, it will go
objective genitive
7. you carry
3. The joy of the friends is great.
8. we are made
predicate nominative
9. you are carried
4. I hear the great joy of the friends.
10. you (person plural) prefer
subjective genitive
11. we do not wish
5. the sword of the daughter
12. I was going
possessive genitive
13. you were able
6. the breath of God
14. you (person plural) are
subjective genitive
15. to be unwilling
7. the pain of the blind slaves
16. to be made
subjective genitive
17. you (person plural) are carried
8. It is characteristic of sons to love their
18. you go
fathers.
19. I will wish
predicate genitive
20. they prefer
9. an animal of large horns
21. he, she, it was unwilling
genitive of description
Answers to Exercises
187
10. horns of animals
6. Waves are a source of great danger to
possessive genitive
sailors.

11. I reckon that queen (the value) of nothing.

predicate dative

genitive of indefinite value

7. He put the army behind the mountains.

dat. with compound verb

2. Therefore as in seeds is the cause of trees

and plants, so you were the cause of this

5. Money will destroy friendship.

most distressing war.

direct object

2. As Helen for the Trojans, so that man was

the cause of war for this republic, the cause

acc. of extent of time

of pestilence and destruction.

3. We do not wish to go a difficult road.

3. Both the name of peace is sweet and the

internal accusative

thing itself beneficial; but between peace

4. The women advanced to Rome.

and slavery there is a great difference. Peace

acc. of place to which

is tranquil liberty, slavery the most extreme

5. I say that money destroys friendship.

of all evil things, to be repelled not only by

acc. subject of an infinitive

war but even death.

6. He says that the men are shouting.

4. There was a very great amount of wine, a
acc. subject of an infinitive
great quantity of the best silver: . . . Of these
7. Avarice destroyed the mind of the king.
things within a few days there was nothing.
direct object
5. It is characteristic of a commander to
8. For many years avarice was destroying the
conquer with planning no less than with the
mind of the king.
sword.
acc. of extent of time.
6. The recollection of slavery will make liberty
more pleaperson singular
6. 1. Indeed the republic certainly has most noble
7. He does not think your gifts of such great
young men prepared as defenders.
(value).
2. But who can tolerate this most foul beast or
how? What is there in Antonius beyond lust,
3. 1. They prepare those things which are of use
cruelty, arrogance, audacity?
to the town.
3. Put before your eyes the happiness of the
2. That man was in charge of the Roman
senate and the Roman people.
citadel.
4. Already I had seen that an evil war against
3. What reason did you bring to the Roman
the altars and hearths, against our life and
people?
fortunes was not being prepared, but waged

4. To some planning was lacking, to others
by a profligate and desperate man.
spirit, to others opportunity; to no one the

5. But for how many days in that villa did you
will (was lacking).
most fouly revel!

5. Let us prefer death to slavery.

6. O the criminal baseness of the man, o the
shamelessness, the worthlessness, the lust

4. 1. I do not have a sword.
not to be borne!
dat. of the possessor

2. The king was giving money to the soldiers.

7. 1. The animal is bigger than the boy.
dat. indirect object
abl. of comparison

3. The ship had to be destroyed by the poets.

2. The animals are led by the boy.
dat. of agent
abl. of personal agent

4. The city of great luxury had to be destroyed

3. The women came to the sea with great
by the sailors.
care.
dat. of agent
abl. of manner

5. That water is harmful to children.

4. The women came from Rome.
dat. with intransitive verb
Answers to Exercises

5. You drove out the poet because of avarice.
4. Gold is the most beautiful of all good
abl. of cause
things.
6. You drove out the poet with a sword.
5. I say that water is as beautiful as possible.
abl. of means
6. The wretched poet was shouting about the
7. With the poets singing, the gods heard us.
avarice of the Romans.
abl. absolute
7. The poet was shouting wretchedly about the
8. That year there were many wars in the
avarice of the Romans.
abl. of time when
2. 1. All of your plans are clearer to us than light.
9. The king is much more insane than the
2. But who is able to bear this most foul beast?
queen.
3. Indeed the republic certainly has most noble
abl. of degree of difference
young men prepared as defenders.
10. I fear animals with large horns.
4. Who at any time (was) more pleasing to
abl. of description
rather famous men, who more conjoined
11. The queen ran out of the city because of with rather foul men? What citizen ever of fear.
better parts, what enemy more horrible to abl. of cause
this state? Who more dirty in his pleasures,
who more patient in labors? Who more
8. 1. They are indeed of excellent mind, the best greedy in rapacity, who more unrestrained advice, outstanding agreement.
in bribery?
2. All these men differ among themselves in respect to language, customs, laws.
Chapter 8
3. But Antonius is being held, pressed,
pressured now by those troops which we
1. 1. The sailor sees.
already have, soon by those which within a
2. The sailor will see the mountain.
few days the new consuls will prepare.
3. The sailor saw the mountain with his eyes.
4. For who is more chaste than this young
4. The sailor had seen the war in the mountains man, who more modest, what more with his eyes.
illustrious example do we have in our youth
5. With many tears the wretched sailor was seeing the extremely bad war in the
5. Already that man had brought the habit of
mountains of the kingdom.
being a slave to a free state, partly because
of fear, partly because of suffering. I can
compare you with that man in respect to lust
of dominating, but in respect to other things
in no way must you be compared with him.
With these men being the producers and
leaders, with the gods helping, with us
keeping watch and providing many things
for the future, with the Roman people being
in agreement, we will indeed be free within
a short time. Moreover the recollection of
slavery will make liberty more pleaperson
singular
3. 1. We will proceed with arguments, we will
refute the charges with proofs clearer than
Chapter 7
light; fact will right with fact, case with
case, reason with reason.
1. 1. Evil men love money.
2. Of these two charges I see the creator, I see

the source, I see the certain head and name.

3. Much money is much better than much

But these kinds of excellences not only in

love.

our customs but even now in books are

Answers to Exercises

189

scarcely discovered. Even the pages which

4. Should I walk to the sea?

used to contain that ancient severity have
deliberative

fallen into disuse.

5. Should we have walked to the sea?

4. Between the earth and heaven, in the same
deliberative

air, hang, separated by discrete intervals,

6. Let us walk to the sea!

seven stars which, from their movement we
hortatory
call planets. In the middle of these moves

7. If only we had walked to the sea!

the sun, of the largest magnitude and power
optative

and not only the ruler of seasons and lands,

8. Should the soldiers not have walked to the

but also of the stars themselves and of

sea?

heaven. It is ®tting for those judging its
deliberative
works to believe that this (the sun) is the
spirit and mind of the entire world, this is
the principal rule and spirit of nature. This
8. 1. We have been born for honor and freedom;
one provides light and removes darkness,
either let us have these things or let us die
this conceals, this illuminates the remaining
with dignity.
stars, this regulates from the use of nature
2. For who would not fear a god seeing and
the successions of the seasons and the year
pondering and noticing all things and
which is always being reborn; this scatters
thinking that all things related to him,
the gloom of heaven and even paci®es the
attentive and full of concern.
clouds of the human mind; this one also
3. O the stupidity! Should I say stupidity or
lends his light to the other stars, extra bright,
remarkable shamelessness?
outstanding, looking upon all things, also
4. Let some sport be given to the age, let youth
hearing all things: . . .
be more free; let not all things be denied to
5. 1. Do not shout!
pleasures; let that true and upright reason
2. Do not write a book!
not always overcome; let desire and pleasure
3. Do not push the son!
sometimes conquer reason.

4. Do not be pushed!

5. If only I could discover true things as easily

5. Do not destroy the city, oh soldiers!

as refute false things!

6. Do not destroy the city, oh soldiers!

6. If only you had never entered into an

7. Destroy the city, oh soldiers!

alliance with Caesar or had never pulled it

8. Destroy the city, oh soldier!

apart!

7. For why should I have placed myself as an

6. 1. Hear, hear, senators, and learn the wounds

obstacle to your audacity?

of the republic.

2. Save therefore, judges, a citizen of good

skills, of good parts, of good men.

9. 1. the poet singing

3. Do not think that I today, when I respond to

2. liberty destroyed

that man as just as he provoked me, have

3. liberty destroyed by avarice

forgotten myself.

4. liberty destroyed by the avarice of the

4. For which reason depart and remove this

soldiers

fear for me: if it is true, so that I may not be

5. the poet about to shout

oppressed, but if false so that I may finally

6. the poet on the mountain about to shout
cease to fear.

7. the poet on the mountain about to shout about liberty
7. 1. If only our sailors had conquered!
8. the poet on the mountain about to shout optative about liberty destroyed by the avarice of
2. If only the sailors would conquer!
the soldiers optative
9. The poet on the mountain who is about to shout about liberty which was destroyed by potential
the avarice of the soldiers is dying.
190
Answers to Exercises
10. The poet on the mountain who was about
8. They were waging war until the king was to shout about liberty which had been killed.
destroyed by the avarice of the soldiers
9. They were waging war until the king died.
should return.
11. The boy walking to the sea fears the
10. Since the king had been killed, the queen captured slaves.
was shouting.
12. The boy walking to the sea fears the slaves
11. Although the king had been killed, who were captured by the sailors. nevertheless the queen was happy.

13. The boy walking to the sea sees the slaves 12. When the moon departed, the light of day killing the animals. came.

14. The boy walking to the sea saw the animals which had been killed by the slaves.

2. 1. Then finally you will be killed, when no one so base, so desperate, so similar to you will

10. 1. The queen whom the king fears is loved by be able to be found.

the poet.

2. Nor for this reason are our speeches less acc. direct obj. effective because they arrive with pleasure

2. The king by whom the queen is feared hates to the ears of the judges.

the poet.

3. For indeed what good man would not have abl. personal agent been a creator of your death since the health

3. The king whom the queen hates fears and life of every excellent man rested upon animals with large horns.

it, the liberty and dignity of the Roman acc. direct obj. people (rested upon it).

4. The animals which had been led to city by
4. But before I approach those things which the king who hates poets were feared have been disputed by you, I will say what I think about you yourself.

5. Since you speak about ancient things, make use of the ancient liberty from which we have degenerated even more than (we have degenerated) from eloquence.

6. The bodies of the animals whose horns had been sold were being placed in the fire. Caesar and because he wished no one to be made equal with himself in respect to prestige, had completely turned himself away from his friendship.

7. But nevertheless men, although they are in violently disturbed circumstances, if at least wretched, the king was giving gold to the people.

1. Because the slaves were extremely violently disturbed circumstances, if at least wretched, the king was giving gold to the people.

2. The king was giving gold to the people
(supposedly) because the slaves were
3. 1. The people fear that the avarice of the king
extremely wretched.
will destroy the kingdom.
3. Although the slaves are most wretched, the
2. The poet was afraid that avarice had
king will not give gold to the people.
destroyed the kingdom.
4. Since the king had given gold to the
3. The king deters the poets from writing
people, the slaves were not shouting.
books.
5. When the king gave gold to the people,
4. The king will not deter the soldiers from
they shouted.
killing the poets.
6. Because the queen had been captured, the
5. The Romans did not doubt that empire was
king was preparing war.
the greatest of goods.
7. The king was preparing war before the
6. The poet was begging the king that the
queen could be killed.
books not be destroyed.
Answers to Exercises
191
7. The king will not destroy the books
2. If the insane king had not destroyed the
provided that the soldiers kill the poets.
kingsdom, the poets would not have ~ed to
8. The king wishes to kill the poets in order that the people may be free from books.

3. If the son should not preserve his faith, the father would be most wretched. (Future less vivid)

9. The poets were being killed by the king in such a way that the people feared much.

4. If the son were not preserving his faith, the father would be most wretched. (Present contrary-to-fact)

10. So great was the avarice of the king that the people now is a people of slaves.

5. If the son had not preserved his faith at that time, the father would now be most wretched. (Present contrary-to-fact)

4. 1. Was he so insane that he entrusted all his fortunes to the slaves of another person?

2. Let desire and pleasure sometimes conquer wretched. (Mixed contrary-to-fact) reason, provided that the following rule and

6. If many poets walk in the city, they give control be maintained.

3. But now, in order that I may free myself from all ill will, I will put in the middle (i.e., (Simple)

7. If the king should kill the poets, the people would fear. (Future less vivid)

peace to both the queen and the people.

3. But now, in order that I may free myself (Simple)

from all ill will, I will put in the middle (i.e.,

7. If the king should kill the poets, the people explain) the thoughts of the philosophers would fear. (Future less vivid)

concerning the nature of the gods.
8. If the insane king kills the poets, the
4. But since, senators, something must be said
people will fear much. (Future more vivid
by me on behalf of myself and many things
emphatic)
(must be said) against Antonius, I ask one
9. If the great poet had been killed by the
thing of you, that you listen to me in a
insane king, the queen would have
friendly manner when speaking about
destroyed the peace. (Past contrary-to-fact)
myself, and another thing I myself shall
10. If the great poet is killed by the king, the
bring about, that, when I speak against that
queen will destroy the peace. (Future more
man, you listen attentively.
vivid)
5. You with that throat, with those ¯anks, with
that gladiator's strength of your entire body,
had drunk so much (of) wine at the wedding
of Hippia that it was necessary for you on
6. 1. We would also have lost our memory itself
the following day to vomit in view of the
with our voice if it were so much in our
Roman people.
power to forget as (it is in our power) to
6. Why were you either so friendly that you
keep silent.
lent gold or so hostile that you feared
2. Many jokes are customarily in letters which,
poison?
if they should be exposed, would seem
7. Or were they afraid that so many men would foolish.
be unable to overcome one man, strong men
3. If your parents feared you and you were not (would be unable to overcome) a weak man, able to please them in any way (i.e., by any swift men (would be unable to overcome) a means) you would withdraw from their eyes terri®ed man?
(sight) to some other place.
8. Nor must it be doubted that there were poets 4. But if some state were found in which no before Homer.
one sinned, a lawyer would be completely
9. For which reason depart and remove this unnecessary among innocent men just as fear for me; if it is true, in order that I may a doctor (would be) among healthy not be oppressed, but if false, in order that men.
®nally I may cease to fear.
5. But what would you say in opposition really if I should deny that I ever sent that letter to you?
5. 1. If the insane king destroys the kingdom,
6. The day would now run out if I should try to the poets will ¯ee to Rome. (Future more express the things which can be said against
Answers to Exercises

7. 1. Poets came to the city in order that they might write books.
2. So blind were the poets that they did not see the danger.
3. There are people of the sort who love money more than liberty.
4. The king because he loved money more than liberty was preparing war.
5. The soldiers were seeking something of the sort which they would love more than money.

10. 1. While the slaves were fleeing, the soldiers destroyed the city.
2. When if the slaves were fleeing, the soldiers will destroy the city.
3. If the slaves were fleeing, the soldiers would be destroying the city.
4. When the city had been destroyed by the soldiers, the commander shouted that he was king.
5. If the city had been destroyed by the...
2. Then finally you will be killed, when no one soldiers, the commander would have so foul, so desperate, so similar to you will shouted that he was king. be able to be found (no one) of the sort who
6. If the city is destroyed by the soldiers, the would not say that it was done rightly. As commander will shout that he is king. long as there will be anyone of the sort who
7. While the commander was shouting that he would dare to defend you, you will live. was king, the slaves were fleeing from the
3. For what is there indeed, Catiline, of the sort city. which now in this city would be able to
8. If the commander is king, the slaves will please you, in which there is no one, outside fear much. that conspiracy of desperate men, of the sort
9. If the commander had been king, the who would not fear you, no one who would slaves would have feared much. not hate you?
10. Although the commander was shouting
4. Decidius is sent with a few men in order that he was king of the city, nevertheless that he may look over the nature of the the soldiers departed.
place.
5. Hear now, please, not those things of the
11. 1. And so when all of their fields had been sort which he did basely and intemperately destroyed, their villages and buildings had against himself and his own private honor, been burned, Caesar led the army back and but which he did impiously and monstrously settled it in winter camp. against ourselves and our fortunes, that is, 2. Although a small part of the summer against the whole republic. remained, nevertheless Caesar hurried to set 6. For why should I have placed myself as an forth into Britain. obstacle to your audacity (of the sort which) 3. And just as the old time saw what was the neither the authority of this body nor the most extreme in liberty, so we (see) what in opinion of the Roman people nor any laws slavery, with even the exchange of speaking were able to restrain? and listening having been removed through trials. 9. 1. The king will give money to the poet when=if=because he sings. 12. 1. We think that the queen is wretched. 2. Although he was singing, nevertheless the 2. We think that the queen was wretched. king did not give money to the poet. 3. We think that the queen will not speak to 3. The king would give money to the poet if he
us.

were singing.

4. He thinks that the mothers of the dead soldiers are walking toward the sea.

the poets if they had been captured by the

5. He thought that the mothers of the dead soldiers had walked to the sea.

Answers to Exercises

193

6. There is a rumor that the mothers of the dead soldiers will walk to the sea.

give gold.

7. There was a rumor that the mothers of the dead soldiers would walk to the sea.

had destroyed the city.

8. He says that the animals are being looked at by the boys.

being destroyed by the soldiers.

9. He says that the animals were looked at by the boys.

8. Tell me by whom the king was killed.

9. He asked why we are not loved.

10. He said that the animals were being looked at by the boys.

10. Who asked why we had not been loved?
11. He said that the animals had been looked at by the boys.

15. 1. I (saw) what that man (was thinking and watching for) and that man on the other hand saw what I was thinking and watching.

12. He said that the boys would look at the animals.

13. He said that the animals would look at the boys.

2. That man (saw) what I (was thinking and watching for) and I on the other hand saw what that man was thinking and watching.

14. No one believes that the king will kill the poets.

15. Who would believe that the king killed the poets?

3. For what was the reason why Caelius wanted to give poison to that woman? But

13. 1. Is it believable then that so great a crime was nevertheless it has not been said from where committed for no reason? that poison came, how it was prepared.

2. Now you will understand that I am keeping

4. And so today I will accomplish that he watch for the safety of the republic much understand how great a favor he received more sharply than you are for its destruction.
5. And just as the old time saw what was the
3. I was grieved, I was grieved, senators, that
most extreme in liberty, so we (see) what in
the republic which had formerly been saved
slavery, with even the exchange of speaking
by your counsels and mine would perish
and listening having been removed through
within a short time.
trials.
4. For there are and have been philosophers (of
the sort) who believed that the gods have no
16. If, judges, there should perhaps now be present concern for human matters. And if the
someone ignorant of the laws, of trials, of our
opinion of these men is true, what devotion
practice, he would undoubtedly wonder what is
can there be, what sanctity, what
the great terribleness of this case because
religion? . . . However, there are other
during holidays and public entertainments,
philosophers, and these indeed are great and
when all law court business matters have been
noble, (of the sort) who believe that the
suspended, this one trial is being conducted,
entire world is managed and ruled by the
nor would he doubt that the defendant is being
mind and reason of the gods.
accused of so great a crime that, if this thing
5. The clever man does not understand that he
were neglected, the state could not stand.
against whom he speaks is being praised by
1. Present subjunctive in the protasis of a
   him, that those among whom he speaks are
   future-less-vivid conditional sentence.
   being criticized.
3. Present subjunctive in indirect question in
   primary sequence showing time
   simultaneous to the main verb.
4. Do you know to whom the king will give
   gold?
5. Ablative absolute.

194

Answers to Exercises

6. Present subjunctive in a clause of doubting
2. Perfect subjunctive in a relative clause in
   in primary sequence showing time
   indirect statement in primary sequence
   simultaneous to the main verb.
   showing time prior to the main verb.
7. Present subjunctive in a result clause in
3. Ablative of description.
   primary sequence.

4. Present subjunctive in a relative clause in
   indirect statement in primary sequence
17. 1. The king kills poets because they shout
showing time prior to the main verb about liberty.

2. The queen says that the king kills poets

19. 1. He says that if war is waged in the province, because they shout about liberty.
the farmers will run. (Simple)

3. The queen said that the king was killing the poets because they were shouting about liberty.

2. He says that if war is waged in the province, the farmers will run. (Future)

3. He was saying that if war were waged in the province, the farmers would run. (Future)
because they shouted about liberty.

4. The queen says that the king killed the poets because they shouted about liberty.

4. He says that if war were being waged in the province, the farmers would be running.
because they shouted about liberty. (Present contrary-to-fact)

5. The queen says the king will kill the poets because they shouted about liberty.

5. He says that if war had been waged in the province, the farmers would have run. (Past contrary-to-fact)

6. The queen was saying that the king had killed the poets because they were shouting about liberty.

6. He was saying that if war had been waged in the province, the farmers would have run. about liberty.
8. The queen was saying that the king who feared the people had killed the poets diligently, (and) to judge truly concerning this because they had shouted about liberty. entire case, you will so decide, judges, that
9. The queen was saying that the king who neither would anyone for whom whether he feared the people would kill the poets wished (to do so or not) were permitted, have because they were shouting about liberty. descended to this accusation, nor, when he had descended, would he have any hope (anything
18. When the same man hears that there is a law of hope), if he were not relying upon the which, in the case of rebellious and criminal intolerable lust and excessively bitter hatred of citizens who have occupied the senate armed, someone else. who have inflicted violence upon magistrates, The indirect question utrum vellet is the who have attacked the republic, orders a trial to subject of liceret. be held daily, he would not disapprove of the

Ad hanc accusatio nemo non descendisset is cui into trial but that a young man of outstanding
talent, diligence, favor is being accused by the
son of that man whom he himself is calling and
has called, moreover that he is being attacked
by the resources of a prostitute, he would not
21. 1. The queen thinks that the poets will be
@nd fault with the loyalty of that man, he would
killed by the king.
think that the lust of a woman must be
2. The queen thought that the poets would be
suppressed, he would judge that you are very
killed by the king.
hard working, for whom it is not permitted to
3. The queen believes that on that day the
be at leisure not even during the leisure that is
citizens will fear the king.
common to all.
4. The queen believed that on that day the
1. Subject accusative of an indirect statement.
citizens would fear the king.
Answers to Exercises
195
5. There was a rumor that the king would not
which you devise against us to be brought
be able to kill the poets whom the queen had
against you.

hidden.

6. What does it matter whether I wanted it to be done or that I am happy that it was done?

22. 1. That the king prepares war wearies the citizens.

2. It does not concern the poet whether the

24. 1. Is it sweet to live?

king destroys the books.

2. I will go to the province in order to see the

3. The poet said that all books would be

war.

3. I will go to the province in order to see the

4. The avarice of the king disgusts all.

war.

5. It concerns all that liberty be preserved.

4. I will go to the province for the sake of

6. It wearies the queen to see the king.

seeing the war.

7. It most greatly interests you to go away.

5. To kill the poets was a terrible thing to do.

8. It will be necessary for all the citizens to

6. The poet wished to remain in the city.

read this book.

7. The soldiers are afraid to destroy the city.

9. It will be necessary that this book be read

8. For the sake of destroying the liberty of all, by all the citizens.

the king wished to kill the poets.
10. It was not permitted for us that we live in peace.

25. 1. O an affair not only foul to see but even to hear!

23. 1. In such great happiness of the whole state

2. Is it not therefore better to die a thousand times than to be unable to live in one's own depressed state without the protection of armed men?

2. Nevertheless it will not disgust (one) even

3. The day would now run out if I should try to with a rough and unfinished voice to have express the things which can be said against composed a record of prior slavery and a this thought.

4. On behalf of my perpetual desire of

3. Neither did the soldiers embarrass me nor maintaining and increasing your dignity, I did you (embarrass) the leader.

ask and beg you, senators, that first,

4. When finally was it that what is permitted although it will be bitter to hear or was not permitted?

incredible to have been said by Cicero, you

5. For a long time already it was fitting for you hear what I will say without offense, and to be led to death by order of the consul, that you not reject it before I have explained Catiline; (it was fitting) for the destruction
how it is.

This page intentionally left blank.

INDEX

ablative case, 3±4, 60, 91±97

participle

absolute, 94, 145±148

future, 62, 64, 118

of cause (from), 92

perfect, 61, 64±66

of comparison (from), 93

present, 61, 62, 64±66

degree of difference (by), 93

perfect indicative, 52

of description (with), 93

pluperfect indicative, 52

of manner (with), 93

present indicative, 39

of means/instrument (by), 92

verbs, 35, 39

of personal agent (by), 92

adjectives, 17±26

of place from which (from), 91±92

as adverbs, 73±74, 88, 100

of place where (in), 92

comparative degree of, 24±26, 100±101

with prepositions, 76±77, 94

declension of, 17±23

of respect, 94

rst-second, 17±19, 28, 73, 74

of separation (from), 93
third, 19±23, 61, 73
of time when/within which (in), 92
definition of, 17
absolute ablative, 94, 145±148
demonstrative, 29±31, 99
accentuation, xiv±xv
rst-second-declension, 17±19, 23, 28, 73, 74
accusative case, 3, 88±91
gender of, 17±21, 25
adverbial, 88
and genitive singular, 23
cognate, 88
indefinite, 32±33
direct object, 88
interrogative, 99
of duration of time, 88
irregular, 23
of exclamation, 89
one-termination, 21
of extent of space, 88
participles as, 117, 144
internal, 88
positive, 24
of place to which, 88±89
possessive, 28±29
with prepositions, 74±77, 89
predicate, 99
subjects of infinitives, 88
pronouns as, 29
supine in, 60
substantive, 100
active periphrastic, 63
superlative degree of, 25±26, 100±101
active voice, 35, 39
syntax of, 99±103
and deponent verbs, 63±64
third-declension, 19±23, 61, 73
future, 60, 62, 64, 118
one-termination, 21
future imperative, 49
three-termination, 19±20
future indicative, 43±44
two-termination, 20±21
future perfect indicative, 53
three-termination, 19±20
imperfect indicative, 41±42
two-termination, 20±21
imperfect subjunctive, 47
verbal
in®nitive
gerundive as, 172
future active, 60
participles as, 61, 117
perfect, 59±60
adverbal accusative, 88
present, 59, 64
adverbs, 73±74, 77
present active, 59
accusative of adjectives as, 88
197
INDEX

adverbs (continued)
of result, 140
adjectives as, 73±74, 88, 100
simple sentences, 119±120
comparative of, 74
with subjunctive, 140±144
de®nition of, 73
result, 129
formation of, 73±74
subordinate, 121
participleas, 144
ablative word combinations as, 94
positive, 74
in conditional sentences, 135
superlative of, 74
in indirect statement, 158±159
agent, dative of, 86
sequence of tenses, 122
agreement
temporal, 121, 123±124
of adjectives with nouns, 17, 99, 117
cognate accusative, 88
of relative pronoun and antecedent, 119, 120
commands
alphabet, xiii±xiv
imperative mood for, 36
consonants, xiii
indirect, 129

diphthongs, xiv

negative simple sentences,
vowels, xiv

110±112

antecedents, 31, 119, 120

subjunctive mood, 114

apodosis, 135, 162, 163

comparative degree

aspect (of verb tenses), 36±37

adjectives, 24±25, 100±101

adverbs, 74

comparison

cases

ablative of (from), 93

definition of, 2

with quam, 100±101

general explanation of, 1±2

complementary infinitives, 172

of nouns, 1±2

completed action, 36±37

(See also specific cases)

complex sentences

causal clauses, 121, 124±125

ablative absolute, 145±148

cause

causal clauses, 124±125

ablative of (from), 92

clauses in, 121

relative clauses of, 141
clauses of doubting, 130
characteristic
clauses of prevention, 130
genitive of, 81
clauses of proviso, 131
relative clauses of, 140
concessive clauses, 125±128
clauses
conditional sentences, 135±140
causal, 121, 124±125
contrary-to-fact conditions, 136±137
in complex sentences, 121
future conditions, 135±136
concessive, 125±128
in indirect statement, 162±165
of doubting, 130
simple conditions, 135
fear, 130
definition of, 121
fore ut, 165±167
fear clauses, 130
independent
fore ut clause, 165±167
main verbs of, 113
gerund/gerundive, 172±173
simple sentences as, 105
impersonal verbs, 167±172
of prevention, 130
of emotional distress, 167±168
of proviso, 131
and expressions of permission/necessity, purpose, 128±129
168
relative, 31
of interest, 168±169
of cause, 141
indirect commands, 129
of characteristic, 140
indirect question, 153±158
in indirect statement, 159±162
indirect statement, 148±153
of purpose, 140±141
conditional sentences in, 162±165
INDEX
199
relative clauses in, 159±162
reference, 85
subordinate clauses in, 158±159
decension, 4±5
in®nitives, 171±172
of adjectives, 17±23, 27±32
particiles, 144±145
demonstrative, 29±31
purpose clauses, 128±129
®rst-second, 17±19, 25±26, 28
relative clauses
in®nite, 32±33
of cause, 141
interrogative, 31±32
of characteristic, 140
third, 19±23
in indirect statement, 159±162
de®nition of, 4
of purpose, 140±141
of demonstrative pronouns/adjectives,
of result, 141
29±31
with subjunctive, 140±144
®rst, 4±6
result clauses, 129
fourth, 12
sequence of tenses, 122±123
of inde®nite pronouns/adjectives, 32±33
subordinate clauses in indirect statement,
of interrogative pronouns/adjectives,
158±159
31±32
supine, 173±174
of nouns
syntax of, 121±175
®fh, 13±14
temporal clauses, 123±124
®rst, 4±6
compound verbs, dative with, 85±86
fourth, 12
concern, impersonal verbs of, 168±169
second, 7±9
concessive clauses, 125±128, 144
third, 9±12
conditional sentences, 135±140, 162±165
of participles, 61
conditions of pronouns, 27±32
contrary-to-fact, 136±137, 145, 146,
demonstrative, 29±31
163±164
indefinite, 32±33
future, 135±136, 145
second, 7±9
simple, 135
third, 9±12
conjunction, subordinating, 121±124
defective verb, 70
conjugations, 37±38
deliberative subjunctive, 113
of possessive adjectives, 28
demonstrative adjectives, 99
of verbs, 37±39
demonstratives
definition of, 35
adjectives, 29±31
first, 38, 43, 44
pronouns, 27
fourth, 38, 44
depONENT verbs, 63±66
perfect system, 52±58
deponents
present system, 38±51
imperfect subjunctive, 65±66
second, 38, 43, 44
participles, 64±66
third, 38±40, 43, 44
future active, 64±66
contrary-to-fact conditions, 136±137, 145, 146,
perfect active, 64±66
163±164
present active, 64±66
description
ablative of (with), 93
dative case
genitive of, 81
of agent, 86
difference, ablative of degree of (by), 93
with compound verbs, 85±86
diphthongs, xiv
indirect object, 84±85
direct address, 4
with intransitive verbs, 86
direct object, 88
nouns, 3, 84±87
case of, 3
of the possessor, 85
gerundive for expressing, 172
predicate, 85
doubting, clauses of, 130
200
INDEX
emotional distress, impersonal verbs of, 167±168
neuter, 17±21
exclamation, accusative of, 89
third-declension, 19±21
masculine, 17±21
of mixed-gender noun groups, 99
fear clauses, 130
neuter, 17±21
fifth declension, 13±14
of nouns, 1
first-conjugation verbs, 38, 43, 44
first declension
second declension
second-declension, 8
of adjectives, 17±19, 25±26, 28
third-declension, 9, 11
of nouns, 4±6
of reflexive pronouns, 29
first-declension adjectives, 17±19, 25±26, 28
genitive case
first-declension nouns, 4±6
adjectives, 23
first person, 35
with certain verbs, 82
first-second-declension adjectives, 17±19, 73, 74
of characteristic, 81
fore ut clause, 165±167
of description, 81
fourth-conjugation verbs, 38, 44
with impersonal verbs, 82
fourth declension, 12
of indefinite value, 81
fourth-declension nouns, 60
nouns, 2, 80±84
future active
objective, 80±81
in®nitives, 60
partitive, 80
participles, 62, 118
possessive, 80
future conditions, 135±136
predicate, 81
future imperative
subjective, 81
active, 49
gerundive, 172±173
passive, 49
formation of, 172±173
future indicative, 68, 70
uses of, 172±173
active, 43±44
gerunds, 172±173
irregular, 67±68
formation of, 60±61
passive, 44
uses of, 172±173
future in®nitive, 67±68
future participles, 62±63
active, 62, 63
passive, 62, 63
historical in®nitives, 172
future passive
hortatory subjunctive, 114
in®nitives, 60
participles, 62, 63
future perfect, 70
imperative mood, 36
future perfect indicative
formation of, 48, 110
active, 53
negative commands, 110±112
passive, 55
present
future perfect tense, 37, 70
active, 48
future-less-vivid conditions, 136
passive, 48±49
future-more-vivid conditions, 135±136, 145
simple sentences, 110±112
future tense, 37
tenses of, 37
imperatives, 69±70
imperfect indicative, 68, 70
gender, 17
active, 41±42
of adjectives, 17±21, 25
irregular, 67±68
feminine, 17±21
passive, 42
 rst-second-declension, 17±18
imperfect subjunctive, 65±66
masculine, 17±21
active, 47
INDEX

201

passive, 47
in indirect statement, 149±150
secondary sequence in, 123
as nouns, 171
wishes, 113
perfect active, 59
imperfect tense, 37
perfect passive, 59±60
impersonal verbs, 66, 167±172
present active, 59, 64
in complex sentences, 167±172
present passive, 59, 64±66
of emotional distress, 167±168
subjects of, accusative case for, 88
and expressions of permission/necessity, 168
syntax of, 171±172
of interest, 168±170
tenses of, 149±150
syntax of, 167±169
infl
uses of, 167±172
definition of, 2
indefinite pronouns/adjectives, 32±33
of verbs, 35
indefinite value, genitive of, 81
intensifier, ipse as, 30
independent clauses
interest, impersonal verbs of, 168±170
in complex sentences, 121
internal accusative, 88
main verbs of (subjunctive mood), 113
interrogatives
simple sentences as, 105
adjectives, 31±32, 99
indicative mood, 36
pronouns, 31±32
future, 68
intransitive verbs, dative with, 86
imperfect, 68, 70
ipse, 30
active, 41±42
irregular adjectives, 23
passive, 42
irregular nouns, 14±16
perfect
irregular verbs, 67±68
active, 52
i-stem declension
passive, 55, 64±66
nouns, 9±12
pluperfect
verbs, 44
active, 52
passive, 55
present, 68±70
jussive subjunctive, 114
active, 39
passive, 39±40, 63, 65±66
simple sentences, 106±110
of subordinating conjunctions, 121
law of the penult, xiv n.2
tenses of, 37
locative case (location)
indirect commands, 129
®rst declension, 5 n.2
indirect object, 3, 84±85
nouns, 4, 97
indirect questions, 153±158
second declension, 8 n.3
indirect statement, 88
in complex sentences, 148±153
conditional sentences in, 162±165
macron, xiv
relative clauses in, 159±162
manner, ablative of (with), 93
subordinate clauses in, 158±159
means/instrument, ablative of (by), 92
syntax of, 148±153
mixed contrary-to-fact conditions, 137
in®nitives, 59±60
mixed future conditions, 137
complementary, 172
modal auxiliaries, 36
in complex sentences, 171±172
moods (of verbs), 36
de®nition of, 59
motion, 88
formation of, 59±60
future active, 60
future passive, 60
necessity, verbs expressing, 168
historical, 172
negative commands, 110±112
202
INDEX
nominative case, 2, 79±80
of description, 81, 93
predicate nominative, 79±80
direct object, 88
subject, 79
of exclamation, 89
non-i-stem declension
of extent of time/space, 88
nouns, 9
fourth-declension, 60
verbs, 43
gender of, 1
nouns, 1±16
genitive case, 2, 80±84
ablative case, 3±4, 91±97
with certain verbs, 82
absolute, 94, 145
of characteristic, 81
of cause (from), 92
of description, 81
of comparison (from), 93
of indefinite value, 81
of description (with), 93
objective, 80±81
of manner (with), 93
partitive, 80
of means/instrument (by), 92
possessive, 80
of personal agent (by), 92
predicate, 81
of place from which (from), 91±92
subjective, 81
of place where (in), 92
of indefinite value, 81
with prepositions, 94
indirect object, 84±85
of respect, 94
with intransitive verbs, 86
of separation (from), 93
irregular, 14±16
of time when/within which (in), 92
i-stem, 9±12
accusative case, 3, 88±91
locative case, 4, 97
adverbial, 88
of manner (with), 93
direct object, 88
of means/instrument (by), 92
of exclamation, 89
nominative case, 2, 79±80
of extent of time/space, 88
predicate nominative, 79±80
of place to which, 88±89
subject, 79
with prepositions, 89
non-i-stem, 9
subjects of infinitives, 88
number of, 1
adverbial, 88
objective, 80±81
of agent, 86
partitive, 80
cases of, 1±2
of personal agent (by), 92
of cause (from), 92
of place from which (from), 91±92
with certain verbs, 82
of place to which, 88±89
of characteristic, 81
of place where (in), 92
of comparison (from), 93
possessive, 2, 80
with compound verbs, 85±86
of the possessor, 85
dative case, 3, 84±87
predicate, 81, 85
of agent, 86
predicate nominative, 79±80
with compound verbs, 85±86
with prepositions, 89, 94
indirect object, 84±85
of respect, 94
with intransitive verbs, 86
of separation (from), 93
of the possessor, 85
stem for all, 7
predicate, 85
subject, 79
decension of, 4±14
subjective, 81
@fth, 13±14
subjects of infinitives, 88
@rst, 4±6
syntax of, 79±97
fourth, 12
of time when/within which (in), 92
second, 7±9
verbal, 59±61
third, 9±12
gerund as, 171
INDEX
203
infinitives as, 171
imperfect subjunctive, 47
supine, 173±174
infinitives
vocative case, 4
future passive, 60
number, 39
perfect passive, 59±60
of nouns, 1
present passive, 59, 64±66
of subject, 35
participles
future, 62, 63
perfect, 62
objective genitive, 80±81
present, 61
obligation, verbs expressing, 168
perfect, 54±58
one-termination adjectives, 21, 61
perfect indicative, 55, 64±66
optative subjunctive, 113
perfect infinitives, 59±60
ownership, 80
perfect subjunctive, 55
periphrastic, 63, 86
pluperfect indicative, 55
pluperfect subjunctive, 56
participles, 54, 61±63
present imperative, 48±49
in ablative absolutes, 145
present imperfect indicative, 42
as adjectives, 144
present imperfect subjunctive, 47
as adverbs, 144
present indicative, 39±40, 63, 65±66
in complex sentences, 144±145
present infinitive, 59, 64±66
decision of, 61
present participles, 61
definition of, 61
present subjunctive, 46
deponents, 64±66

subjunctive

future active, 64±66

perfect, 55

perfect active, 64±66

pluperfect, 56

present active, 64±66

present, 46

formation of, 61±63

verbs, 35, 39

future

past contrary-to-fact conditions, 136±137, 145,

active, 62, 63, 118

146

passive, 62, 63

past tense, 37

perfect

penultimate syllable, xiv±xv

active, 61

perfect active in®nitives, 59

passive, 62

perfect active participle, 61

present, 68, 69, 117±118

perfect indicative, 122 n.1

active, 61, 62

active, 52

passive, 61

passive, 55, 64±66

relative time, 117±118

perfect participles, active, 61
simple sentences, 117±119
perfect passive infinitives, 59±60
uses of, 144±145
perfect subjunctive
partitive genitive, 80
active, 53
passive periphrastic, 63, 86
negative commands, 111
passive voice, 35, 39
passive, 55
and deponent verbs, 63±64
primary sequence in, 122
future imperative, 49
perfect system (of verb conjugation)
future indicative, 44
active, 52±54
future infinitives, 60
passive, 54±58
future participles, 62, 63
perfect tense, 37
future perfect indicative, 55
periphrastics
imperfect indicative, 42
active, 63
204
INDEX
periphrastics (continued)
present imperfect indicative
formation of, 62±63
active, 41±42
passive, 63
passive, 42
permission, verbs expressing, 168
present imperfect subjunctive
person, 35, 39
active, 47
personal agent, ablative of (by), 92
passive, 47
personal pronouns, 27±28
present indicative, 68±70
place
active, 39
where (in), 92
irregular, 67±68
to which, 88±89
passive, 39±40, 63, 65±66
from which (from), 91±92
present infinitives
pluperfect indicative
active, 59, 64
active, 52
passive, 59, 64±66
passive, 55
present participles, 68, 69, 117±118
pluperfect subjunctive
active, 61, 62
active, 53, 59
passive, 61
passive, 56
present stem verbs, 38±39, 43
secondary sequence in, 123
present subjunctive, 69, 70
wishes, 113
active, 45±46
pluperfect tense, 37, 70
commands, 114
plural (see number)
irregular, 67±68
positive adjectives, 24
negative commands, 111
positive adverbs, 74
passive, 46
possession
primary sequence in, 122
dative case, 85
wishes, 113
genitive case, 80
present system (of verb conjugation),
possessive adjectives, 28±29
38±51
possessive genitive, 80
present tense, 37
potential subjunctive, 113
prevention, clauses of, 130
predicate, 2, 80
primary sequence of tenses, 122, 163
ablative absolutes, 146
principal parts (verbs), 37±38
adjectives, 99
pronouns, 27±32
dative, 85
as adjectives, 29
definition of, 2
definition of, 27
genitive, 81
demonstrative, 29±31
nominative, 79±80
indefinite, 32±33
predicate dative, 85
interrogative, 31±32
predicate genitive, 81
personal, 27±28
predicate nominatives, 79±80
re- exive, 28±29
prefixes, 32, 85±86
relative, 31
prepositions, 74±77
pronunciation, xiii±xv
with ablative and accusative cases, 76±77
accentuation, xiv±xv
ablative with, 94±95
of consonants, xiii
with accusative case, 3, 75±77, 89
of diphthongs, xiv
accusative with, 89
of Latin words, xiv±xv
definition of, 74
of vowels, xiv
present contrary-to-fact conditions, 136, 145
protasis, 135, 144, 162, 163
present imperative
proviso, clauses of, 131
active, 48
purpose, relative clauses of, 140±141
passive, 48±49
purpose clauses (complex sentences),
uses of, 48
128±129
INDEX
205
quantity, adjectives denoting, 99
in®nitives, 171±172
questions
participles, 144±145
deliberative, 113
purpose clauses, 128±129
indirect, 153±158
relative clauses in indirect statement, 159±162
relative clauses with subjunctive, 140±144
result clauses, 129
re¯exive pronouns, 28±29
sequence of tenses, 122±123
relative clauses, 31
subordinate clauses in indirect statement, 158±
of cause, 141
159
of characteristic, 140
supine, 173±174
in indirect statement, 159±162
syntax of, 121±175
of purpose, 140±141

temporal clauses, 123±124

of result, 141

conditional, 135±140

simple sentences, 119±120

direct object, 88

with subjunctive, 140±144

indirect object, 84±85

relative pronouns, 31

in®nitive as subject of, 171

relative time

simple, 105±120

in ablative absolutes, 146

imperative mood, 110±112

in®nitives in indirect statement, 149±150

as independent clauses, 105

participles, 117±118

indicative mood, 106±110

subjunctives in subordinate clauses, 122±123

participles, 117±119

respect, ablative of, 94

relative clauses, 119±120

result, relative clauses of, 141

subjunctive mood, 113±117

result clauses (complex sentences), 129

subject of, 79, 171

separation, ablative of (from), 91±93

second-conjugation verbs, 38, 43, 44

sequence of tenses

second declension
in complex sentences, 122±123
of adjectives, 17±19, 25±26, 28
primary, 122
of nouns, 7±9
secondary, 122
second person, 35
simple conditions, 135
secondary sequence of tenses, 122, 163±164
simple sentences, 105±120
semi-deponent verbs, 66
imperative mood, 110±112
sentences
as independent clauses, 105
complex
indicative mood, 106±110
ablative absolute, 145±148
negative commands, 110±112
causal clauses, 124±125
participles, 117±119
clauses of doubting, 130
relative clauses, 119±120
classes of prevention, 130
subjunctive mood, 113±117
clauses of proviso, 131
deliberative, 113
concessive clauses, 125±128
hortatory, 114
conditional sentences, 135±140
jussive, 114
conditional sentences in indirect statement,
optative, 113
162±165
potential, 113
definition of, 121
syntax of, 105±120
fear clauses, 130
space, extent of, 88
fore ut clause, 165±167
statement, indirect. see indirect statement
gerund/gerundive, 172±173
stem, 5
impersonal verbs, 167±172
i-stem, 9±12, 44
indirect commands, 129
non-i-stem, 9, 43
indirect question, 153±158
perfect, 52±54
indirect statement, 148±153
present, 38±39, 43±47, 61
206
INDEX
subject, 79
in indirect statement, 158±159
case of, 2
sequence of tenses, 122
in indirect statement, 149
subordinating conjunctions, 121±122
in®nitives as, 171
mood of, 121±122
nominative case, 79
temporal, 123±124
subject accusative construction, 149
substantive adjectives, 100
subjective genitive, 81
substantive result clauses, 129
subjunctive mood, 36
superlative degree
deliberative, 113
adjectives, 25±26, 100±101
hortatory, 114
adverbs, 74
imperfect, 65±66
genitive case, 80
active, 47
partitive genitive with, 80
passive, 47
supines
secondary sequence in, 123
formation of, 60
wishes, 113
uses of, 173±174
independent uses, 113±117
syncopation, 53±54
jussive, 114
syntax
optative, 113
of adjectives, 99±103
perfect
adverbial use of, 100
active, 53
comparative, 100±101
negative commands, 111
predicate, 99
passive, 55
substantive, 100
primary sequence in, 122
superlative, 100±101
pluperfect
of complex sentences, 121±175
active, 53
ablativus absolute, 145±148
passive, 56
causal clauses, 124±125
secondary sequence in, 123
clauses of doubting, 130
wishes, 113
clauses of prevention, 130
potential, 113
clauses of proviso, 131
present, 69, 70
concessive clauses, 125±128
active, 45±46
conditional sentences, 135±140
commands, 114
conditional sentences in indirect statement,
negative commands, 111
162±165
passive, 46
fear clauses, 130
primary sequence in, 122
fore ut clause, 165±167
wishes, 113
gerund/gerundive, 172±173
relative clauses with, 140±144
impersonal verbs, 167±172
sequence of tenses, 121±122
indirect commands, 129
simple sentences, 113±117
indirect question, 153±158
deliberative, 113
indirect statement, 148±153
hortatory, 114
in®nitives, 171±172
jussive, 114
participle, 144±145
optative, 113
purpose clauses, 128±129
potential, 113
relative clauses in indirect statement, 159±162
subordinate uses, 121±123
relative clauses with subjunctive, 140±144
tenses of, 37
result clauses, 129
verbs, 36
sequence of tenses, 122±123
subordinate clauses, 121
subordinate clauses in indirect statement, 158±
ablative word combinations as, 94
159
in conditional sentences, 135
supine, 173±174

INDEX
207
temporal clauses, 123±124
uncompleted action, 36±37
of nouns
ablativ case, 91±97
accusative case, 88±91
verbal adjectives
dative case, 84±87
gerundive as, 172
genitive case, 80±84
participles as, 61, 117
locative case, 97
verbal nouns, 59±61
nominative case, 79±80
gerund as, 60±61, 172
of simple sentences, 105±120
inceptive, 59±60
imperative mood, 110±112
inceptive as, 171±172
indicative mood, 106±110
supine, 60, 173±174
participles, 117±119
verbs, 35±71
relative clauses, 119±120
active voice, 35, 39
subjunctive mood, 113±117
conjugation of, 37±39
perfect system, 52±58
present system, 38±51
dative with compound, 85±86
dative with intransitive, 86
temporal clauses, 121, 123±124
defective, 70
tenses
deponent, 63±66
in conditional sentences, 162±165
irst conjugation, 38
future, 37
fourth conjugation, 38
future perfect, 37
future indicative, 68
imperfect, 37
future perfect tense, 37
in indirect questions, 153±154
future tense, 37
of infinitives, 149±150
genitive with, 82±84
of participles, 117±118
imperative, 69±70
perfect, 37
imperative mood of, 36
pluperfect, 37
imperfect indicative, 68
present, 37
imperfect tense, 37
sequences of, 122±123
impersonal, 66, 167±172
of verbs, 36±37
in complex sentences, 167±172
(See also specific tenses)
of emotional distress, 167±168
third-conjugation verbs, 38±40, 43, 44
and expressions of permission/necessity,
third declension
168
of adjectives, 19±23, 61, 73
of interest, 168±170
of nouns, 9±12
of independent clauses, 113
third person, 35
indicative mood of, 36
three-termination adjectives, 19±20
in indirect statement, 149
time
irregular, 67±68
ablative of when or within which (in), 92
mood of, 36
accusative of extent of, 88
number of, 35
relative
participles as, 117
in ablative absolutes, 146
passive voice, 35, 39
in infinitives in indirect statement, 149±150
past tense, 37
participles, 117±118
person of, 35
subjunctives in subordinate clauses, 122±123
pluperfect tense, 37
of verb tenses, 36±37
present indicative, 68, 69
(See also temporal clauses)
present participle, 68, 69
two-termination adjectives, 20±21, 24
present subjunctive, 69

INDEX
verbs (continued)
passive, 35, 39
present tense, 37
vocative case, 4
principal parts of, 37±38, 166
voice
second conjugation, 38
active, 35, 39
semi-deponent, 66
passive, 35, 39
subjunctive mood of, 36
vowels, xiv
tense, 36±37
third conjugation, 39, 40n.2
voice, 35
active, 35, 39
word order, 105±106
Document Outline

- Copyright
- CONTENTS
- PREFACE
- Introducion to the Latin Alphabet and Pronouncation
  - Alphabet
    - CONSONANTS
    - VOWELS
    - DIPHTHONGS
  - Pronunciation of Lat in Words
- CHAPTER 1: The Noun
  - The Nominative Case
  - The Genitive Case
  - The Dative Case
  - The Accusative Case
  - The Ablative Case
  - The Vocative Case
  - Declension
    - THE FIRST DECLENSION
    - THE SECOND DECLENSION
    - THE THIRD DECLENSION
    - THE FOURTH DECLENSION
    - THE FIFTH DECLENSION
  - A Few Irregular Nouns
- CHAPTER 2: The Adjective
  - First-Second-Declension Adjectives
  - Third-Declension Adjectives
    - THIRD-TERMINATION ADJECTIVES
    - TWO-TERMINATION ADJECTIVES
    - ONE-TERMINATION ADJECTIVES
  - Adjectives with the Genitive Singular in -ius
  - Comparison of Adjectives
    - THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE
    - THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE
- CHAPTER 3: Pronouns and Adjectives
  - Personal Pronouns
  - Reflexive Pronouns
  - Possessive Adjectives
  - Demonstratives
  - Relatives
  - Interrogatives
  - Indefinites
- CHAPTER 4: The Verb
  - Person and Number
  - Voice
  - Mood
    - INDICATIVE
    - SUBJUNCTIVE
    - IMPERATIVE
  - Tense
  - Conjugations
  - Present System
    - PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE
PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE
IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE
IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE
FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE
FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE
PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE
PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE
IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE
IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE
PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE
PRESENT IMPERATIVE PASSIVE
FUTURE IMPERATIVE ACTIVE

Perfect System
PERFECT ACTIVE SYSTEM
PERFECT PASSIVE SYSTEM

Verbal Nouns
INFINITIVES
SUPINE
GERUND

Participles
PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE
PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE
FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE
PERIPHERASTICS

Deponent Verbs
PARTICIPLES
IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

Semi-Deponent Verbs
Impersonal Verbs
Some Irregular Verbs
PRESENT PARTICIPLE
PRESENT INDICATIVE
IMPERFECT INDICATIVE
FUTURE INDICATIVE
PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE
PRESENT PARTICIPLE
PRESENT INDICATIVE
IMPERATIVE

CHAPTER 5: Adverbs and Prepositions
Adverbs
Prepositions
COMMON PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE CASE
COMMON PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ABLATIVE CASE
PREPOSITIONS THAT TAKE BOTH ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE CASES

CHAPTER 6: Syntax of the Noun
Nominative Case
SUBJECT
PREDICATE NOMINATIVE
Genitive Case
POSSESSIVE GENITIVE
PARTITIVE GENITIVE
OBJECTIVE GENITIVE
SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE
GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC, OR PREDICATE GENITIVE
GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION
- Genitive of Indefinite Value
- Genitive with Certain Verbs

- **Dative Case**
  - Indirect Object
  - Dative of the Possessor
  - Predicate Dative
  - Dative with Compound Verbs
  - Dative with Certain Intransitive Verbs
  - Dative of Agent

- **Accusative Case**
  - Direct Object
  - Subject Accusative of an Infinitive
  - Accusative of Extent of Time or Space
  - Adverbial Accusative
  - Accusative of Place to Which
  - Accusative with Prepositions
  - Accusative of Exclamation

- **Ablative Case**
  - Ablative of Place From Which (From)
  - Ablative of Place Where (In)
  - Ablative of Time When or Within Which (In)
  - Ablative of Means or Instrument (By)
  - Ablative of Cause (From)
  - Ablative of Personal Agent (By)
  - Ablative of Manner (With)
  - Ablative of Separation (From)
  - Ablative of Comparison From
  - Ablative of Degree of Difference (By)
  - Ablative of Description (With)
  - Ablative of Respect
  - Ablative Absolute
  - Ablative with Prepositions

- **Locative Case**

- **CHAPTER 7: Syntax of the Adjective**
  - Predicate Adjective
  - Substantive Adjective
  - Adverbial Use of the Adjective
  - Comparative and Superlative Adjectives

- **CHAPTER 8: Syntax of the Simple Sentence**
  - Indicative Mood
  - Imperative Mood
    - Negative Commands
  - Subjunctive Mood: Independent Uses
    - Potential
    - Deliberative
    - Optative
    - Hortatory or Jussive
  - Participles
  - Relative Clauses

- **CHAPTER 9: Syntax of the Complex Sentence**
  - Sequence of Tenses
    - Relative Time
  - Temporal Clauses
  - Causal Clauses
  - Concessive Clauses
  - Purpose Clauses
Indirect Commands
Result Clauses
Fear Clauses
Clauses of Prevention
Clauses of Doubting
Clauses of Proviso
Conditional Sentences
  • SIMPLE CONDITIONS
  • FUTURE CONDITIONS
  • CONTRARY-TO-FACT CONDITIONS
Relative Clauses with the Subjunctive
  • RELATIVE CLAUSE OF CHARACTERISTICS
  • RELATIVE CLAUSE OF PURPOSE
  • RELATIVE CLAUSE OF RESULT
  • RELATIVE CLAUSE OF CAUSE
Participles Revisited
Ablative Absolute
Indirect Statement
Indirect Question
Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statement
Relative Clauses in Indirect Statement
Conditional Sentences in Indirect Statement
"Fore ut" Clause
Impersonal Verbs
  • VERBS OF EMOTIONAL DISTRESS
  • VERBS AND EXPRESSIONS OF PERMISSION AND NECESSITY
  • VERBS OF INTEREST
The Infinitive
Gerund and Gerundive
Supine
Answers to Exercises
INDEX
Table of Contents

Preface
Introduction to the Latin Alphabet and Vowels
CHAPTER 1
The Nominative Case
The Dative Case
The Vocative Case
The Second Declension
The Third Declension
The Fourth Declension
The Fifth Declension
A Few Irregular Nouns
CHAPTER 2
Third-Declension Adjectives
Two-Termination Adjectives
One-Termination Adjectives
Adjectives with the Genitive Singular in -ōÅus
Comparison of Adjectives
The Superlative Degree
CHAPTER 3
Re¯exive Pronouns
Demonstratives
Relatives
Inde®nites
CHAPTER 4
Mood
Conjugations
Present System
Present Indicative Active
Imperfect Indicative Active
Imperfect Indicative Passive
Future Indicative Active
Future Indicative Passive
Present Subjunctive Active
Present Subjunctive Passive
Imperfect Subjunctive Active
Present Imperative Active
Future Imperative Active
Perfect System
Perfect Passive System
Verbal Nouns
Supine
Participles
Perfect Passive Participle
Deponent Verbs
64
Imperfect Subjunctive
Semi-Deponent Verbs
Some Irregular Verbs